



<AutomationML/>

The Glue for Seamless
Automation Engineering

**Application Recommendation
Provisioning for MES and ERP – Support for
IEC 62264 and B2MML**

Release Date: November 7, 2018

ID: AR-MES-ERP

Version: 1.1.0

Compatibility: AutomationML 2.0 (CAEX 2.15)

Table of Content

Table of Content	3
List of Figures	6
List of Tables.....	7
List of Code Listings	11
Preamble I Provided Libraries	12
I.1 Role Class Libraries	12
I.2 Interface Class Libraries	12
Preamble II Referenced Libraries.....	12
II.1 Role Class Libraries	12
II.2 Interface Class Libraries	12
Preamble III Referenced Documents	13
1 Introduction	14
1.1 Provisioning for ERP and MES	14
1.2 IEC 62264	15
1.2.1 Personnel	15
1.2.2 Equipment	15
1.2.3 Physical Asset	16
1.2.4 Material.....	16
1.2.5 Process Segment.....	16
1.3 Structure of this Document	16
2 Terms, Definitions and Abbreviations	17
2.1 Terms and Definitions	17
2.2 Abbreviations	17
2.3 Conformity.....	17
3 Mapping of IEC 62264-2 to AutomationML.....	18
3.1 IEC 62264-2 Common Object Models	18
3.1.1 Hierarchy Scope.....	18
3.1.2 Personnel	19
3.1.3 Equipment	20
3.1.4 Physical Asset.....	21
3.1.5 Material.....	23
3.1.6 Process Segment.....	25
3.2 IEC 62264-2 Operations Management Information.....	27
3.2.1 Operations Definition.....	27
3.2.2 Operations Schedule.....	29
3.2.3 Operations Performance	31
3.2.4 Operations Capability.....	33

3.2.5 Process Segment Capability	35
3.3 Visualization of the Mapping	36
4 Related AutomationML Libraries.....	37
4.1 AutomationML Interface Class Libraries.....	37
4.1.1 AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib	37
4.1.2 AutomationMLBPRInterfaceClassLib.....	37
4.2 AutomationML Role Class Libraries	38
4.2.1 AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib.....	38
4.2.2 AutomationMLBMRoleClassLib	39
4.2.3 AutomationMLCMIRoleClassLib	39
4.2.4 AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib	40
4.2.5 AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib.....	41
4.2.6 AutomationML Extended RoleClass Library (non-normative).....	42
4.2.7 AutomationMLBPRRoleClassLib (non-normative).....	43
4.3 Alignment of IEC 62264-2 and AutomationML	43
4.3.1 Alignment of IEC 62264-2 and AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib	43
4.3.2 Alignment of IEC 62264-2 and Detailed Normative AutomationML Role Class Libraries	46
4.3.3 Alignment of IEC 62264-2 and AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib	47
5 AML Libraries for Supporting IEC 62264	48
5.1 Interface Class Library AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib	48
5.2 Role Class Library AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib	51
5.3 Role Class Library AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib	52
5.3.1 Hierarchy Scope	55
5.3.2 Personnel	55
5.3.3 Equipment	59
5.3.4 Physical Asset	62
5.3.5 Material	66
5.3.6 Process Segment	74
5.3.7 Operations Definition	81
5.3.8 Operations Schedule	90
5.3.9 Operations Performance	100
5.3.10 Operations Capability	109
5.3.11 Process Segment Capability	119
6 Referencing B2MML Files	120
7 Relation to OPC Unified Architecture	121
8 Notes regarding the Examples in the Appendices	123
References.....	124
Appendix A AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib	125
Appendix B AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib	126

Appendix C AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib.....	153
Appendix D Examples for Referencing External B2MML Documents	154
D.1 Referencing a B2MML Document from AML.....	154
D.2 Referencing a Specific Element within a B2MML Document from AML.....	155
D.3 Process-Product-Resource (PPR).....	157
Appendix E Example for Modeling IEC 62264 Information within AML Documents	177

List of Figures

Figure 1:	Overview of the engineering data exchange format AML.	14
Figure 2:	Typical expanded equipment hierarchy (from [IEC 62264-1], graphically adapted).	15
Figure 3:	Hierarchy scope model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	18
Figure 4:	Personnel model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	19
Figure 5:	Equipment model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	20
Figure 6:	Physical asset model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	21
Figure 7:	Relationship between equipment information and physical asset information (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	22
Figure 8:	Material model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	23
Figure 9:	Process segment model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	25
Figure 10:	Operations definition model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	27
Figure 11:	Operations schedule model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	29
Figure 12:	Operations performance model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	31
Figure 13:	Operations capability model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	33
Figure 14:	Process segment capability model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).	35
Figure 15:	Visualization of the mapping from IEC 62264-2 to the CAEX metamodel (left) and to existing AutomationML elements of the AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib (right).	36
Figure 16:	Usage example for interface class HierarchyScopeConnector.	48
Figure 17:	Usage example for interface class ResourceConnector.	49
Figure 18:	Usage example of interface class EquipmentAssetConnector.	49
Figure 19:	Usage example of interface class DependencyConnector.	50
Figure 20:	Usage example for interface class TestConnector.	50
Figure 21:	Composition of transformation/alignment functions: $f \circ g \neq h$.	121
Figure 22:	Excerpt of the basic information model for AutomationML-based models (cf. [DIN 16592-12]).	121
Figure 23:	Excerpt of the basic information model for IEC 62264-based models (cf. [OPC-IEC62264]).	121
Figure 24:	Referencing corresponding elements from IEC 62264 and AutomationML in OPC UA.	122
Figure 25:	Visualization of the PPR example (from IEC 62714-1).	157
Figure 26:	Internal links of the PPR example (from IEC 62714-1).	158

List of Tables

Table 1:	Template for the mapping of IEC 62264-2 concepts to AutomationML elements.....	18
Table 2:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 hierarchy scope model to AML.....	18
Table 3:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 personnel model to AML	20
Table 4:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 equipment model to AML	21
Table 5:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 physical asset model to AML.....	22
Table 6:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 relationship between equipment information and physical asset information.	22
Table 7:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 material model to AML.	24
Table 8:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 process segment model to AML.....	26
Table 9:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 operations definition model to AML	28
Table 10:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 operations schedule model to AML	30
Table 11:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 operations performance model to AML	32
Table 12:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 operations capability model to AML	34
Table 13:	Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 process segment capability model to AML.....	35
Table 14:	InterfaceClasses of the AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib.....	37
Table 15:	InterfaceClass of the AutomationMLBPRInterfaceClassLib.....	37
Table 16:	Selected RoleClasses of the AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib.....	38
Table 17:	RoleClass of the AutomationMLBMRoleClassLib.	39
Table 18:	RoleClass of the AutomationMLCMIRoleClassLib.	39
Table 19:	RoleClasses of the AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib.	40
Table 20:	RoleClasses of the AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib.	41
Table 21:	RoleClasses of the AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib.....	42
Table 22:	RoleClass of the AutomationMLBPRRoleClassLib.	43
Table 23:	Alignment of IEC 62264-2 with AML base role classes.....	45
Table 24:	Alignment of IEC 62264-2 with more detailed normative AML role classes.....	46
Table 25:	Alignment of IEC 62264-2 with the (non-normative) AML extended role class lib.	47
Table 26:	InterfaceClasses needed for supporting concepts of IEC 62264, subsumed in the AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib.....	48
Table 27:	InterfaceClass HierarchyScopeConnector.	48
Table 28:	InterfaceClass ResourceConnector.....	49
Table 29:	InterfaceClass EquipmentAssetConnector.....	49
Table 30:	InterfaceClass DependencyConnector.	50
Table 31:	InterfaceClass TestConnector.	50
Table 32:	RoleClass "B2mmlData" needed for referencing a specific B2MML document, encapsulated in the AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib.	51
Table 33:	RoleClass B2mmlData.....	51
Table 34:	RoleClasses needed for supporting concepts from IEC 62264, subsumed in the AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib.	54

Table 35: Role class HierarchyScope.....	55
Table 36: Role class PersonnelModel	55
Table 37: Role class PersonnelClass.....	56
Table 38: Attribute type PersonnelClassProperty.....	56
Table 39: Role class Person.....	57
Table 40: Attribute type PersonProperty.	57
Table 41: Role class QualificationTestSpecification.....	58
Table 42: Role class QualificationTestResult.....	58
Table 43: Role class EquipmentModel.	59
Table 44: Role class EquipmentClass.....	59
Table 45: Attribute type EquipmentClassProperty.....	60
Table 46: Role class Equipment.....	60
Table 47: Attribute type EquipmentProperty.....	60
Table 48: Role class EquipmentCapabilityTestSpecification.....	61
Table 49: Attribute type EquipmentCapabilityTestResult.....	62
Table 50: Role class PhysicalAssetModel.	62
Table 51: Role class PhysicalAssetClass.....	63
Table 52: Attribute type PhysicalAssetClassProperty.	63
Table 53: Role class PhysicalAsset.....	64
Table 54: Attribute type PhysicalAssetProperty.	64
Table 55: Role class PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestSpecification.	65
Table 56: Attribute type PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestResult.	65
Table 57: RoleClass EquipmentAssetMapping.	66
Table 58: Role class MaterialModel.....	66
Table 59: Role class MaterialClass.	67
Table 60: Attribute type MaterialClassProperty.....	67
Table 61: Role class MaterialDefinition.	68
Table 62: Attribute type MaterialDefinitionProperty.	68
Table 63: Role class MaterialLot.	69
Table 64: Attribute type MaterialLotProperty.	70
Table 65: Role class MaterialSublot.	71
Table 66: Role class MaterialTestSpecification.	72
Table 67: Attribute type MaterialTestResult.	73
Table 68: Role class MaterialAssembly.	73
Table 69: Role class ProcessSegmentModel.	74
Table 70: Role class ProcessSegment.	74
Table 71: Attribute type ProcessSegmentParameter.	75
Table 72: Role class PersonnelSegmentSpecification.	75
Table 73: Attribute type PersonnelSegmentSpecificationProperty.	76

Table 74: Role class EquipmentSegmentSpecification	76
Table 75: Attribute type EquipmentSegmentSpecificationProperty	77
Table 76: Role class PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecification	77
Table 77: Attribute type PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecificationProperty	78
Table 78: Role class MaterialSegmentSpecification	79
Table 79: Attribute type MaterialSegmentSpecificationProperty	80
Table 80: Role class ProcessSegmentDependency	80
Table 81: Role class OperationsDefinitionModel	81
Table 82: Role class OperationsDefinition	81
Table 83: Role class OperationsMaterialBill	82
Table 84: Role class OperationsMaterialBillItem	83
Table 85: Role class OperationsSegment	84
Table 86: Attribute type ParameterSpecification	84
Table 87: Role class PersonnelSpecification	85
Table 88: Attribute type PersonnelSpecificationProperty	85
Table 89: Role class EquipmentSpecification	86
Table 90: Attribute type EquipmentSpecificationProperty	86
Table 91: Role class PhysicalAssetSpecification	87
Table 92: Attribute type PhysicalAssetSpecificationProperty	87
Table 93: Role class MaterialSpecification	88
Table 94: Attribute type MaterialSpecificationProperty	89
Table 95: Role class OperationsSegmentDependency	89
Table 96: Role class OperationsScheduleModel	90
Table 97: Role class OperationsSchedule	91
Table 98: Role class OperationsRequest	92
Table 99: Role class SegmentRequirement	93
Table 100: Attribute type SegmentParameter	94
Table 101: Role class PersonnelRequirement	94
Table 102: Attribute type PersonnelRequirementProperty	95
Table 103: Role class EquipmentRequirement	95
Table 104: Attribute type EquipmentRequirementProperty	96
Table 105: Role class PhysicalAssetRequirement	96
Table 106: Attribute type PhysicalAssetRequirementProperty	97
Table 107: Role class MaterialRequirement	98
Table 108: Attribute type MaterialRequirementProperty	99
Table 109: Role class RequestedSegmentResponse	100
Table 110: Role class OperationsPerformanceModel	100
Table 111: Role class OperationsPerformance	101
Table 112: Role class OperationsResponse	102

Table 113: Role class SegmentResponse	103
Table 114: Attribute type SegmentData.....	104
Table 115: Role class PersonnelActual.....	104
Table 116: Attribute type PersonnelActualProperty.....	105
Table 117: Role class EquipmentActual.....	105
Table 118: Attribute type EquipmentActualProperty.....	106
Table 119: Role class PhysicalAssetActual.....	106
Table 120: Attribute type PhysicalAssetActualProperty	107
Table 121: Role class MaterialActual.	108
Table 122: Attribute type MaterialActualProperty.	109
Table 123: Role class OperationsCapabilityModel	109
Table 124: Role class OperationsCapability.....	110
Table 125: Role class PersonnelCapability.	111
Table 126: Attribute type PersonnelCapabilityProperty.....	112
Table 127: Role class EquipmentCapability.	113
Table 128: Attribute type EquipmentCapabilityProperty.....	114
Table 129: Role class PhysicalAssetCapability.....	115
Table 130: Attribute type PhysicalAssetCapabilityProperty.....	116
Table 131: Role class MaterialCapability.....	117
Table 132: Attribute type MaterialCapabilityProperty.	118
Table 133: Role class ProcessSegmentCapability.	119
Table 134: HasAMLIEC62264UAResource ReferenceType.	122
Table 135: Substitutions in use in Listings 4, 6, 8, and 13.	123
Table 136: Setup of the PPR example (from IEC 62714-1).	157

List of Code Listings

Listing 1: AutomationML IEC 62264 interface class library.....	125
Listing 2: AutomationML IEC 62264 role class library.	126
Listing 3: AutomationML B2MML role class library.	153
Listing 4: InstanceHierarchy excerpt of document Example-01-B2MML-Document.aml.	154
Listing 5: Contents of document Turntable.b2mml.	154
Listing 6: InstanceHierarchy excerpt of document Example-02-B2MML-Element.aml.....	155
Listing 7: Contents of document Equipment.b2mml.	156
Listing 8: InstanceHierarchy, RoleClassLib, and SystemUnitClassLib excerpts of document Example-03-B2MML-PPR.aml.	158
Listing 9: Contents of document PPR-Equipment.b2mml.....	169
Listing 10: Contents of document PPR-PhysicalAssets.b2mml.....	170
Listing 11: Contents of document PPR-Material.b2mml.	172
Listing 12: Contents of document PPR-ProcessSegments.b2mml.....	173
Listing 13: InstanceHierarchy, SystemUnitClassLib, and RoleClassLib excerpt of document Example-04-IEC62264-PPR.aml.	177

Preamble I Provided Libraries

I.1 Role Class Libraries

Role Class Library Name	Version	Comment
AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib	1.0.0	B2MML Role Class Library
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib	1.1.0	IEC 62264 Role Class Library

I.2 Interface Class Libraries

Interface Class Library Name	Version	Comment
AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib	1.0.0	IEC 62264 Interface Class Library

Preamble II Referenced Libraries

II.1 Role Class Libraries

Role Class Library Name	Version	Comment
AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib	2.2.2	AML Base Role Class Library
AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib	2.7.0	AML Extended Role Class Library (non-normative)
AutomationMLBMRoleClassLib	1.1.0	AML Batch Manufacturing Industry Role Class Library
AutomationMLCMIRoleClassLib	1.1.0	AML Continuous Manufacturing Industry Role Class Library
AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib	2.4.0	AML Discrete Manufacturing Industry Role Class Library
AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib	2.3.0	AML Control Industry Role Class Library
AutomationMLBPRRoleClassLib	1.0.0	Best Practice Recommendation: External Data Reference

II.2 Interface Class Libraries

Interface Class Library Name	Version	Comment
AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib	2.2.2	Standard AML Interface Class Library
AutomationMLBPRInterfaceClassLib	1.0.0	Best Practice Recommendation: External Data Reference

Preamble III Referenced Documents

Document-ID	Version	Comment
WP-Part1	2.0.0	AML Whitepaper Part 1: Architecture and General Requirements
WP-Part2	2.0.0	AML Whitepaper Part 2: Role Class Libraries
BPR-EDR	1.0.0	Best Practice Recommendation: External Data Reference

1 Introduction

*AutomationML*¹ (AML) is a standard published by the International Electronic Commission² (IEC) for the exchange of information between automation engineering tools, released as IEC 62714. It is based on the *Computer Aided Engineering Exchange* (CAEX) standard (IEC 62424), which defines a neutral data format for the storage of object hierarchies and object relations, encoded in *Extendable Markup Language* (XML). Its original application scenario is the description of the static structure of a plant's shop floor. AML introduces a distributed document architecture where different documents can be linked together from a central AML document (cf. Figure 1).

The focus of AML so far has been in the description of the shop floor, i.e. the definition of machines, their terminals and communication links, and how they are all wired together. Geometric and kinematic information can be linked to AML objects through the *Collaborative Design Activity*³ (COLLADA) file format, which is also XML based. Logic descriptions for the programming of automated machines can be referenced through documents stored in the *PLCopen*⁴ XML data format.

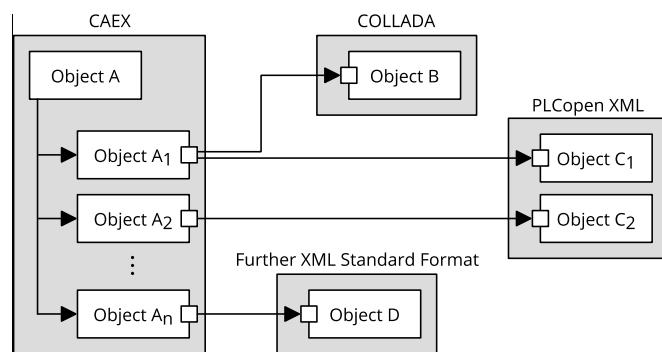


Figure 1: Overview of the engineering data exchange format AML.

1.1 Provisioning for ERP and MES

In a fully integrated system, business and manufacturing functions are aligned in order to foster an efficient data flow. For the data exchange between *Enterprise Resource Planning* (ERP) systems and *Manufacturing Execution Systems* (MES) a data standard has been specified in the IEC 62264 series, based on a standard that has been standardized by the American National Standards Institute⁵ (ANSI) and the International Society of Automation⁶ (ISA): ANSI/ISA-95. A complete XML implementation of IEC 62264 has been published as the *Business To Manufacturing Markup Language* (B2MML) by the *Manufacturing Enterprise Solutions Association* (MESA) International⁷.

After IEC 62264 enables the linking of the business layer (ERP and supply chain management) to the manufacturing layer, linking objects from AML to elements of IEC 62264 further fosters the integration of manufacturing layers.

¹ <https://www.automationml.org/>

² <http://www.iec.ch/>

³ <https://www.khronos.org/collada/>

⁴ <http://www.plcopen.org/>

⁵ <https://www.ansi.org/>

⁶ <https://www.isa.org/>

⁷ <http://www.mesa.org/>

1.2 IEC 62264

IEC 62264 comprises five parts that deal with various aspects of enterprise control system integration. In cases where references to these documents are written without revision information (year of publication), the following default revisions apply:

- IEC 62264-1:2013 models and terminology
- IEC 62264-2:2013 objects and attributes for enterprise-control system integration
- IEC 62264-3:2007 activity models of manufacturing operations management
- IEC 62264-4:2015 object model attributes for manufacturing operations management integration
- IEC 62264-5:2011 business to manufacturing transactions

AutomationML as an object oriented data format mainly overlaps or is related to IEC 62264-2, where core objects and relationships that are relevant in the context of data exchange between the office floor and the shop floor are depicted. Specifically, IEC 62264-2 defines five types of resources that are briefly described in Clauses 1.2.1 to 1.2.5 (an exhaustive mapping of IEC 62264-2 concepts to AML is given in Clause 3). Together, they form the fundament for further modeling steps, such as operations planning, operations performance, etc.

NOTE: This document describes the integration of part 2 if IEC 62264, IEC 62264-2, with AML. Integration of other parts will be realized in future versions of this document.

1.2.1 Personnel

Personnel comprises the actors that are required to operate manufacturing processes. AML is not focused on the definition of human resources, however if required, they could be modeled in AML as well.

1.2.2 Equipment

Equipment represents the equipment of an organization in form of a role based model. One example is the business structure of an organization with regards to physical, geographical or logical features, such as the enterprise and its sites, areas, process cells, production units, production lines, storage zones, units, work cells, and storage units (cf. Figure 2). More specific examples include welders, titration testers, lift trucks, reactors, etc. Equipment may define a hierarchy.

NOTE: Concerning the AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib, equipment corresponds to the “Resource” or “ResourceStructure” role classes.

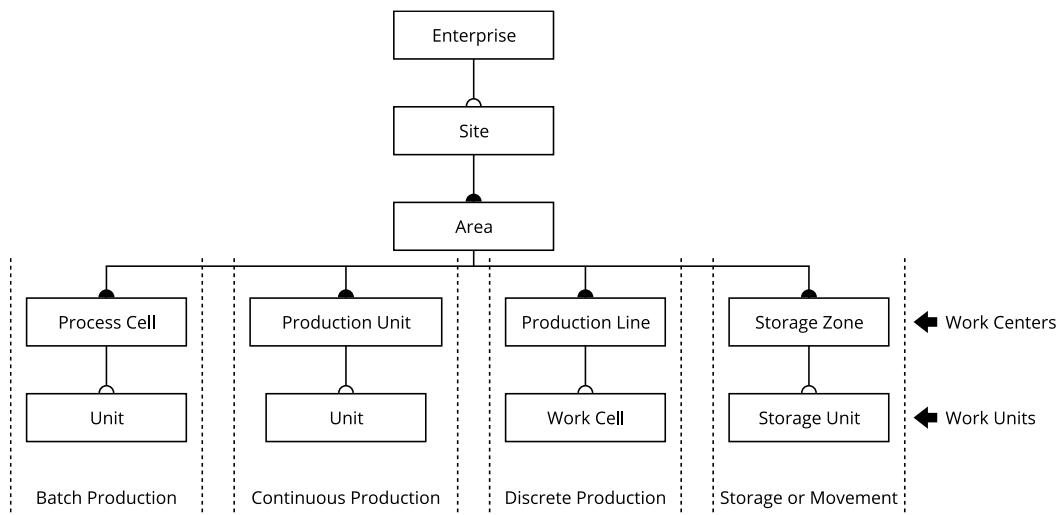


Figure 2: Typical expanded equipment hierarchy (from [IEC 62264-1], graphically adapted).

1.2.3 Physical Asset

Physical assets represent the physical pieces of equipment, i.e. while equipment defines the roles for certain items, a physical asset is the real physical item that implements that role. Physical assets have an impact on the ERP layer, as they are usually of value and need to be tracked financially. Machines for instance have a unique serial number, as such the serial number of a machine resembles a valid value for a physical asset's ID. A dedicated equipment asset mapping represents the relationship between a physical asset and an equipment. It records the time frame in which a physical asset was associated with an equipment.

1.2.4 Material

Material represents raw, finished, and intermediate materials, as well as consumables. A uniquely identified amount of material is referred to as material lot.

NOTE: Concerning the AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib, material corresponds to the "Product" or "ProductStructure" role classes.

1.2.5 Process Segment

Process segments resemble the smallest elements of manufacturing activities that are visible to business processes. Process segments describe a hierarchical model in which multiple levels of abstraction may be defined. Process segments are also a logical grouping of personnel, equipment, physical asset, and material required for a specific manufacturing operation.

NOTE: Concerning the AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib, process segment corresponds to the "Process" or "ProcessStructure" role classes.

1.3 Structure of this Document

The remainder of this document is structured as follows:

- Clause 2 lists (or refers to documents that in turn list) terms, definitions and abbreviations in use in this document.
- Clause 3 describes a mapping of IEC 62264-2 elements to AML modeling elements, i.e., it is a mapping of the IEC 62264-2 and CAEX metamodels.
- Clause 4 depicts the relation of IEC 62264-2 elements to concepts already declared in the AML environment.
- Clause 5 is a set of modeling rules for the *modeling of IEC 62264-2 elements within AML documents*.
- Clause 6 defines the mechanism for *referencing IEC 62264-2 information that resides outside AML documents* but can be referred from AML documents.
- Clause 7 describes potential conflicts between IEC 62264-2, AML and OPC UA; and how to resolve them.
- Appendix A lists the IEC 62264 interface class library defined in this document.
- Appendix B lists the IEC 62264 role class library defined in this document.
- Appendix C lists the B2MML role class library defined in this document.
- Appendix D provides examples for the referencing of external B2MML documents from AML documents with different levels of complexity.
- Appendix E translates the example of Appendix D.3 to a version where all information is modeled within a single AML document and no references to external B2MML documents are required.

2 Terms, Definitions and Abbreviations

2.1 Terms and Definitions

For the purpose of this document, the terms and definitions of IEC 62714-1:2014 and of IEC 62714-2:2015 apply.

2.2 Abbreviations

For the purpose of this document, the abbreviations of IEC 62714-1:2014 and of IEC 62714-2:2015 apply.

2.3 Conformity

In the scope of AML, a B2MML document shall conform to the specification of B2MML version 6.0 (V0600) released in March 2013.

3 Mapping of IEC 62264-2 to AutomationML

IEC 62264-2 defines (i) basic resources that depict the static definitions of an enterprise with regards to its production facilities, such as personnel and material (cf. Clause 3.1) and (ii) operations management information that resembles operational data such as schedules and logs (cf. Clause 3.2).

The following Clauses each (i) describes a sub model of IEC 62264-2, (ii) shows its Unified Modeling Language⁸ (UML) class diagram, and (iii) provides a table comprising a mapping of each IEC 62264-2 concept to one or more corresponding AutomationML element(s). The tables follow the template depicted in Table 1: the first column “IEC 62264-2” identifies the IEC 62264-2 concept (usually a UML class name), the second column “AutomationML” shows the possible AutomationML elements the concept might be realized with, and the third column gives a brief description of the concept in question, usually taken from [IEC 62264-2].

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
«IEC 62264-2 Concept» e.g. Person.	«AutomationML Concept» e.g. InternalElement. <i>NOTE: Multiple AML elements are specified in case several AML concepts fit the given IEC 62264-2 concept or are required (One-to-Many Mapping).</i>	«A brief description of the concept in question, usually taken from [IEC 62264-2].»

Table 1: Template for the mapping of IEC 62264-2 concepts to AutomationML elements.

3.1 IEC 62264-2 Common Object Models

3.1.1 Hierarchy Scope

One often used concept in IEC 62264-2 is that of levels and scopes in a hierarchy. To account for that a simple helper class “HierarchyScope” has been defined in IEC 62264-2 (cf. Figure 3) that can be used to define an equipment hierarchy. A hierarchy scope refers to a piece of equipment and defines an equipment level for that equipment based on the principles defined in Clause 1.2.2. A mapping of the hierarchy scope model to AML is given in Table 2.

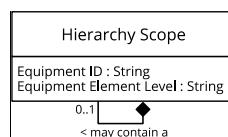


Figure 3: Hierarchy scope model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Hierarchy Scope	InternalElement	Identifies where the exchanged information fits within the role based equipment hierarchy. It defines the scope of the exchanged information, such as a site or area for which the information is relevant.

Table 2: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 hierarchy scope model to AML.

⁸ <http://www.omg.org/spec/UML/>

3.1.2 Personnel

The IEC 62264-2 personnel model (cf. Figure 4) enables the modeling of classes of personnel, specific personnel, and qualifications of personnel [IEC 62264-2]. Personnel classes and individual persons may define properties. A mapping of the personnel model to AML is given in Table 3. Personnel entities have not been explicitly considered in IEC 62714 parts 1 to 4, because of its focus on the physical setup of manufacturing systems. While the modeling of specific persons might be out of scope for many AML models, the specification of personnel classes might be useful for a more detailed view on the manufacturing process.

Persons are modeled as internal elements, while personnel classes are modeled as role classes. With this setup a person can implement multiple personnel classes and a personnel class can be implemented by multiple person elements, which corresponds to the IEC 62264-2 model. A personnel class can be instantiated once (singleton pattern) as an internal element, in order to make it available in an instance hierarchy for e.g., linking.

A person must directly or indirectly refer to the generic “Person” role class defined in the accompanying role class library (AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib), while a person class must inherit from the “PersonClass” role class. The singleton instance of a personnel class (if existing) must not refer to the “Person” role class, but refer to the personnel class role class it represents. The singleton instance is used e.g., when referencing a personnel class from a process segment.

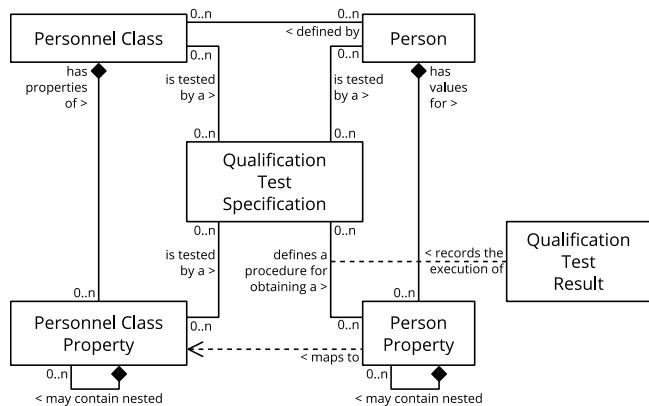


Figure 4: Personnel model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Personnel Class	RoleClass (mandatory) - and - InternalElement (optional)	Representation of a grouping of persons with similar characteristics for a definite purpose such as manufacturing operations definition, scheduling, capability, and performance.
Personnel Class Property	Attribute	Each personnel class shall have zero or more recognized properties.
Person	InternalElement	Representation of a specifically identified individual. A person may be a member of zero or more personnel classes.
Person Property	Attribute	Each person shall have zero or more person properties. These specify the current property values of the person for the associated personnel class property.
Qualification Test Specification	InternalElement	Representation of a qualification test. Can be associated with a personnel class, personnel class property, person, or person property.
Qualification Test Result	InternalElement	Results from a qualification test for a specific person.

Table 3: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 personnel model to AML.

3.1.3 Equipment

IEC 62264-2 role based equipment information (cf. Figure 5) resembles information about classes of equipment, specific equipment, and equipment capability tests [IEC 62264-2]. Equipment classes and specific equipment may define properties. A mapping of the equipment model to AML is given in Table 4.

The mapping is realized following the arguments of the personnel model, i.e., a person is implemented as an internal element in AML and an equipment class as a role class. Similar to the personnel model, an equipment class may be instantiated once as an internal element.

An equipment must directly or indirectly refer to the generic “Equipment” role class defined in the accompanying role class library (AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib), while an equipment class must inherit from the “EquipmentClass” role class. The singleton instance of an equipment class (if existing) must not refer to the “Equipment” role class, but refer to the equipment class role class it represents. The singleton instance is used e.g., when referencing an equipment class from a process segment.

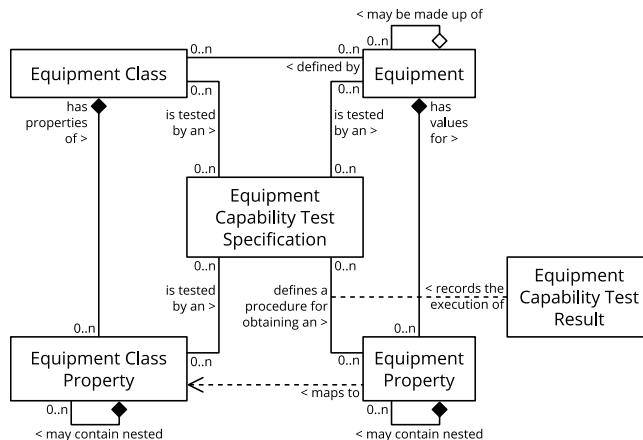


Figure 5: Equipment model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Equipment Class	RoleClass (mandatory) - and - InternalElement (optional)	Representation of a grouping of equipment with similar characteristics.
Equipment Class Property	Attribute	Each equipment class may have zero or more recognized properties.
Equipment	InternalElement	Representation of the elements of the equipment hierarchy model.
Equipment Property	Attribute	An equipment shall have zero or more equipment properties. These may include a unit of measure.
Equipment Capability Test Specification	InternalElement	Representation of a capability test. May be associated with an equipment class, equipment class property, equipment or equipment property.
Equipment Capability Test Result	InternalElement	Results from an equipment capability test for a specific piece of equipment.

Table 4: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 equipment model to AML.

3.1.4 Physical Asset

The IEC 62264-2 physical asset model (cf. Figures 6 and 7) contains information about physical pieces of equipment [IEC 62264-2]. Physical asset classes and physical assets may define properties. A mapping of the physical asset model to AML is given in Tables 5 and 6.

The physical asset model has different cardinalities between the object element (physical asset) and the type element (physical asset class) than the personnel and the equipment models. Still, similar to the other models, a physical asset is instantiated as an internal element, but this time with a required reference to a system unit class representing a physical asset class. Further, a physical asset class is modeled as a system unit class that can be instantiated by any number of physical assets (1:n mapping).

A physical asset must directly or indirectly refer to the generic “PhysicalAsset” role class defined in the accompanying role class library (AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib), while a physical asset class must inherit from the “PhysicalAssetClass” role class. The singleton instance of a physical asset class (if existing) must not refer to the “PhysicalAsset” role class, but refer to the physical asset class role class it represents. The singleton instance is used e.g., when referencing a physical asset class from a process segment.

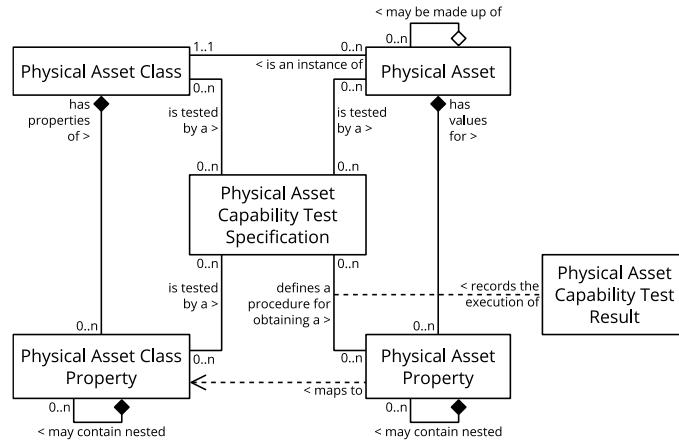


Figure 6: Physical asset model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Physical Asset Class	SystemUnitClass (mandatory) - and - InternalElement (optional)	A representation of a grouping of physical assets with similar characteristics for purposes of repair and replacement.
Physical Asset Class Property	Attribute	Each physical asset class may have zero or more recognized properties.
Physical Asset	InternalElement	A physical piece of equipment shall be presented as a physical asset. Any physical asset shall be a member of one physical asset class.
Physical Asset Property	Attribute	A physical asset shall have zero or more physical asset properties.
Physical Asset Capability Test Specification	InternalElement	Representation of a capability test. May be associated with a physical asset property.
Physical Asset Capability Test Result	InternalElement	Results from a qualification test for a specific physical asset.

Table 5: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 physical asset model to AML.

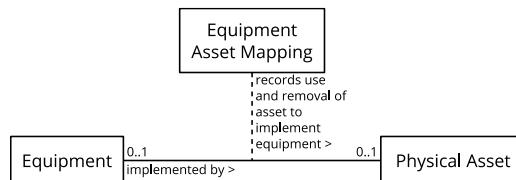


Figure 7: Relationship between equipment information and physical asset information (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Equipment Asset Mapping	InternalElement	Relationship between a physical asset and an equipment. It records the period when one equipment entity and one physical asset entity were associated.

Table 6: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 relationship between equipment information and physical asset information.

3.1.5 Material

The IEC 62264-2 material model (cf. Figure 8) defines information about classes of material, material definitions, and actual materials [IEC 62264-2]. Material classes, material definitions, and actual material may define properties. A mapping of the material model to AML is given in Table 7.

Material classes are implemented in AML as role classes that can be implemented by multiple material definitions that in turn are implemented as system unit classes. Material lots and sublots are implemented as internal elements with the sublots modeled as child elements of their parent lots or sublots.

A material lot or subplot must directly or indirectly refer to the generic “MaterialLot” or “MaterialSublot” role class defined in the accompanying role class library (AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib), while a material definition must refer to the “MaterialDefinition” role class and a material class must inherit from the “MaterialClass” role class. The singleton instance of a material class or material definition (if existing) must not refer to the “MaterialLot” or “MaterialSublot” role class, but refer to the material class role class or material definition system unit class it represents. The singleton instance is used e.g., when referencing a material class or material definition from a process segment.

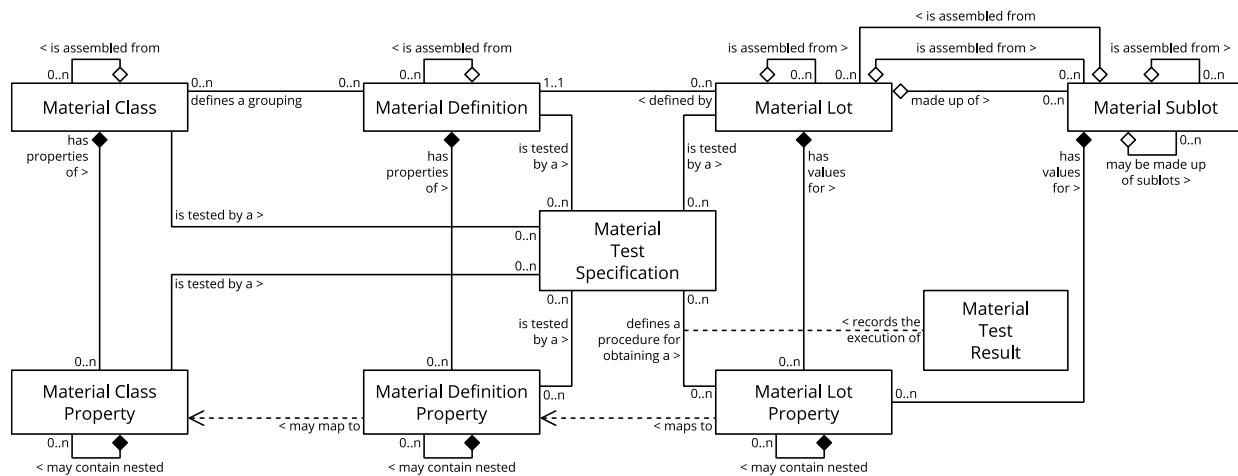


Figure 8: Material model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Material Class	RoleClass (mandatory) - and - InternalElement (optional)	Representation of groupings of material definitions for a definite purpose such as manufacturing operations definition, scheduling, capability and performance.
Material Class Property	Attribute	A material class may define zero or more material class properties.
Material Definition	SystemUnitClass (mandatory) - and - InternalElement (optional)	Representation of goods with similar name characteristics for the purpose of manufacturing definition, scheduling, capability and performance.
Material Definition Property	Attribute	A material definition may define zero or more material definition properties.
Material Lot	InternalElement	Uniquely identified specific amount of material, either countable or weighable. A material lot describes the planned or actual total quantity or amount of material available, its current state, and its specific property values.
Material Lot Property	Attribute	Each material can have unique values for zero or more material lot properties, such as a specific pH value for the specific material lot, or a specific density for the material lot.
Material Sublot	InternalElement	Separately identifiable quantity of the same material lot.
Material Test Specification	InternalElement	Representation of a material test. Shall be associated with one or more material definition properties.
Material Test Result	InternalElement	Results from the execution of a quality assurance test. Records the results from a material test for a specific material lot or material subplot.

Table 7: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 material model to AML.

3.1.6 Process Segment

IEC 62264-2 process segments are the smallest elements of manufacturing activities that are visible to business processes. The process segment model is a hierarchical model that reflects a logical grouping of personnel, equipment, physical assets, and material (cf. Figure 9) [IEC 62264-2]. A mapping of the process segment model to AML is given in Table 8.

A process segment is modeled as an internal element with its diverse specifications modeled as children internal elements. Process segments must refer to role class “ProcessSegment” that is defined in the accompanying role class library (AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib). The same (but with their corresponding classes) applies to the other internal elements listed in this mapping.

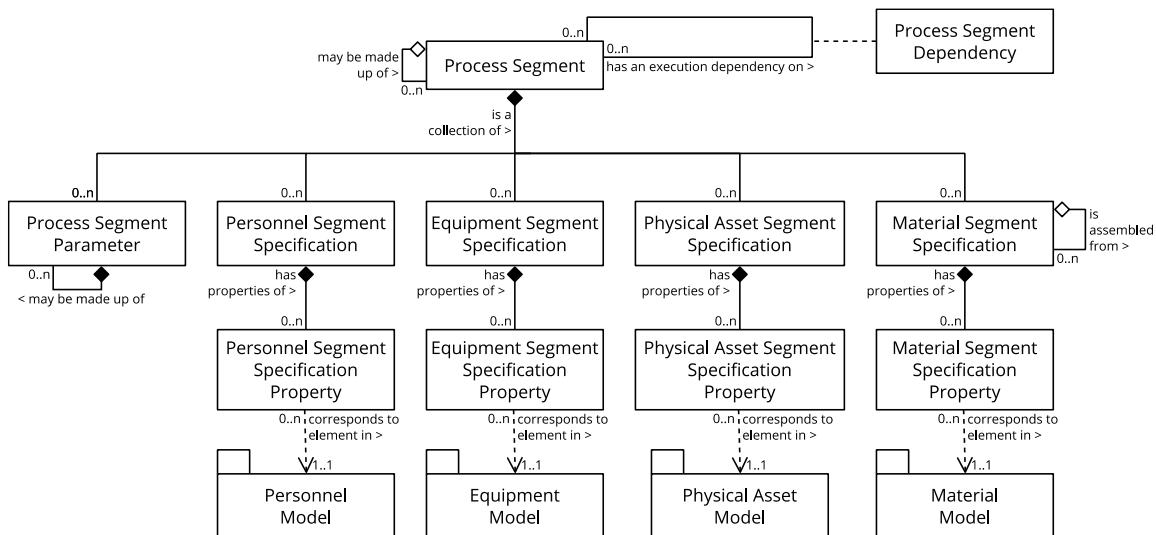


Figure 9: Process segment model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Process Segment	InternalElement	Lists the classes of personnel, equipment, physical assets, and material needed, and/or it may present specific resources, such as specific equipment needed for the process segment. A process segment may list the quantity of the resource needed.
Process Segment Parameter	Attribute	Specific parameters required for a process segment.
Process Segment Dependency	InternalElement	Process dependencies that are independent of any particular product or operations task.
Personnel Segment Specification	InternalElement	Personnel resources that are required for a process segment.
Personnel Segment Specification Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for personnel segment specifications.
Equipment Segment Specification	InternalElement	Equipment resources that are required for a process segment.
Equipment Segment Specification Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for equipment segment specifications.
Physical Asset Segment Specification	InternalElement	Physical asset resources that are required for a process segment.
Physical Asset Segment Specification Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for physical asset segment specifications.
Material Segment Specification	InternalElement	Material resources that are required for a process segment.
Material Segment Specification Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for material segment specifications.

Table 8: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 process segment model to AML.

3.2 IEC 62264-2 Operations Management Information

Operations management information is information that resembles runtime data from manufacturing – be it specific manufacturing schedules, the produced goods of a production run, or the available personnel in a certain period. While the common object models presented in Clause 3.1 correspond closely to concepts of AML, operations management information is typically not modeled in AML. However, there might be use cases that require the recording of operations management information, and for these use cases the following alignment is provided.

3.2.1 Operations Definition

An operations definition defines the resources required to perform a specified operation. The operations definition may apply to defining production, maintenance, quality test, and inventory [IEC 62264-2].

An operations definition is modeled as an internal element with its diverse specifications modeled as children internal elements. Operations definitions must refer to role class “OperationsDefinition” that is defined in the accompanying role class library (AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib). The same (but with their corresponding classes) applies to the other internal elements listed in this mapping.

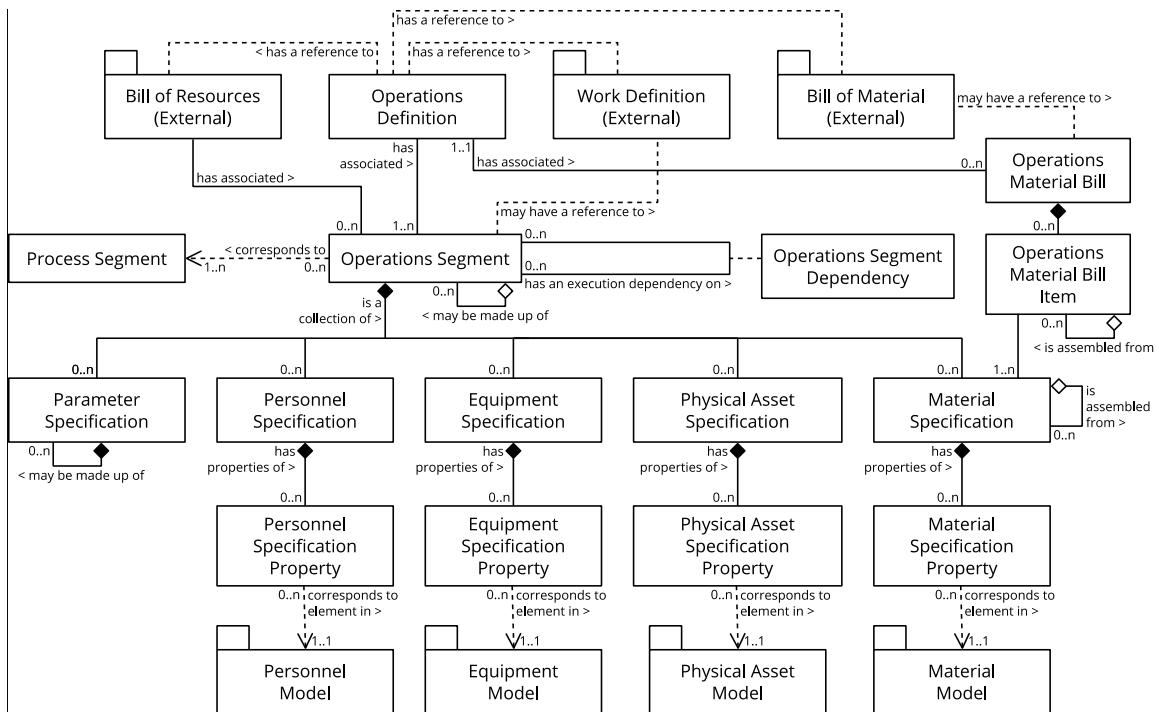


Figure 10: Operations definition model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Operations Definition	InternalElement	Resources required to perform a specified operation.
Operations Material Bill	InternalElement	Collection of all material used in the operation, independent of the process segment the material is used in. There may be multiple operations material bills, with different uses.
Operations Material Bill Item	InternalElement	Items that make up the complete operations material bill.
Operations Segment	InternalElement	Information needed to quantify a segment for a specific operation. It identifies, references, or corresponds to a process segment.
Parameter Specification	Attribute	Specific parameters required for an operations segment. There may be an associated set of zero or more parameter specifications.
Personnel Specification	InternalElement	An identification, reference, or correspondence to a personnel capability. A personnel specification usually specifies a personnel class, but may specify a person.
Personnel Specification Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for personnel specifications.
Equipment Specification	InternalElement	An identification, reference, or correspondence to an equipment capability. An equipment specification may specify either an equipment class or a piece of equipment.
Equipment Specification Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for equipment specifications.
Physical Asset Specification	InternalElement	An identification, reference, or correspondence to a physical asset capability. A physical asset specification may specify either a physical asset class or a physical asset.
Physical Asset Specification Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for physical asset specifications.
Material Specification	InternalElement	An identification or correspondence to a material capability. A material specification specifies a material definition or a material class.
Material Specification Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for material specifications.
Operations Segment Dependency	InternalElement	Operations dependencies that are operation or product specific.

Table 9: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 operations definition model to AML.

3.2.2 Operations Schedule

A request for operations to be performed is an operations schedule. The schedule may apply to scheduling of production, maintenance, quality test, and inventory operations [IEC 62264-2].

An operations schedule is modeled as an internal element with its diverse requirements modeled as children internal elements. Operations schedules must refer to role class “OperationsSchedule” that is defined in the accompanying role class library (AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib). The same (but with their corresponding classes) applies to the other internal elements listed in this mapping.

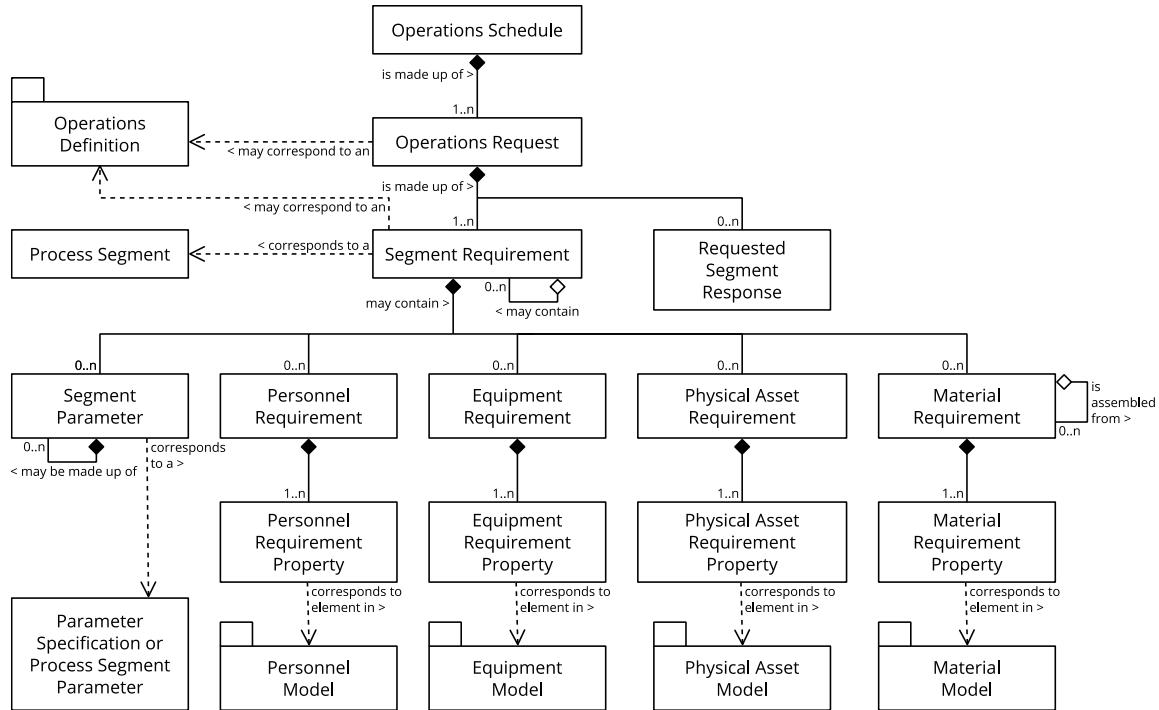


Figure 11: Operations schedule model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Operations Schedule	InternalElement	Request for operations to be performed. An operations schedule shall be made up of one or more operations requests.
Operations Request	InternalElement	Request for an element of an operations schedule. Contains the information required by manufacturing to fulfill the scheduled operation.
Segment Requirement	InternalElement	An operations request shall be made up of one or more segment requirements. Each segment requirement shall correspond to, or reference, an identified operations segment or process segment.
Segment Parameter	InternalElement	Specific parameters required for a segment requirement.
Personnel Requirement	InternalElement	Identification of the number, type, duration, and scheduling of specific certifications and job classifications needed to support the current operations request.
Personnel Requirement Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for personnel requirements.
Equipment Requirement	InternalElement	Identification of the number, type, duration, and scheduling of specific equipment and equipment classifications needed to support the current operations request.
Equipment Requirement Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for equipment requirements.
Physical Asset Requirement	InternalElement	Identification of the number, type, duration, and scheduling of specific physical assets and physical asset class constraints needed to support the current operations request.
Physical Asset Requirement Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for physical asset requirements.
Material Requirement	InternalElement	Identification of a material that is expected to be used in the operations request. Material requirements contain definitions of materials that may be consumed, produced, replaced, sampled, or otherwise used in manufacturing
Material Requirement Property	Attribute	Properties of a material requirement.
Requested Segment Response	InternalElement	Identification of the information sent back as a result of the production request. This information is of the same form as a segment response, but without actual values.

Table 10: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 operations schedule model to AML.

3.2.3 Operations Performance

Operations performance is a report on requested manufacturing and is a collection of operations responses. Operations responses are responses from manufacturing that may be associated with an operations request. There may be one or more operations responses for a single operations request, if the manufacturing facility needs to split the operations request into smaller elements [IEC 62264-2].

An operations performance is modeled as an internal element with its diverse actuals modeled as children internal elements. Operations performances must refer to role class “OperationsPerformance” that is defined in the accompanying role class library (AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib). The same (but with their corresponding classes) applies to the other internal elements listed in this mapping.

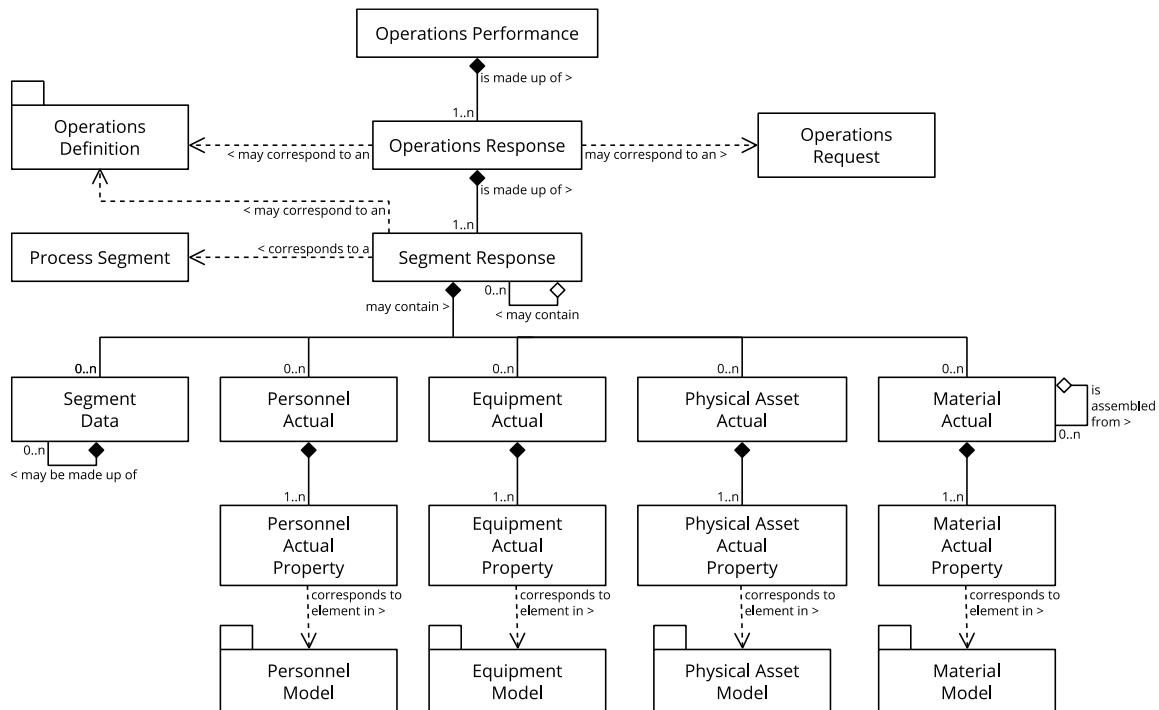


Figure 12: Operations performance model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Operations Performance	InternalElement	Performance of the requested manufacturing requests. Operations performance shall be a collection of operations responses.
Operations Response	InternalElement	Responses from manufacturing that are associated with an operations request. There may be one or more operations responses for a single operations request.
Segment Response	InternalElement	Information on a segment of an operations response. A segment response shall be made up of zero or more sets of information on segment data, personnel actual, equipment actual, and material actual
Segment Data	InternalElement	Other information related to the actual operations made.
Personnel Actual	InternalElement	Identification of a personnel capability used during a specified segment response.
Personnel Actual Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for a personnel actual.
Equipment Actual	InternalElement	Identification of an equipment capability used during a specified segment.
Equipment Actual Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for an equipment actual.
Physical Asset Actual	InternalElement	Identification of a physical asset capability used during a specified segment.
Physical Asset Actual Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for a physical asset actual.
Material Actual	InternalElement	Identification of a material that was used in the operations request. Material actuals contain definitions of materials that may have been consumed, produced, replaced, sampled, or otherwise used in manufacturing.
Material Actual Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for a material actual.

Table 11: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 operations performance model to AML.

3.2.4 Operations Capability

Operations capability information is the collection of information about all resources for operations for selected future and past times. This is made up of information about equipment, physical assets, material, personnel, and process segments. Operations capability describes the names, terms, statuses, and quantities of which the manufacturing control system has knowledge [IEC 62264-2]. The process segment capability element is described in detail in Clause 3.2.5.

An operations capability is modeled as an internal element with its diverse capabilities modeled as children internal elements. Operations capabilities must refer to role class “OperationsCapability” that is defined in the accompanying role class library (AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib). The same (but with their corresponding classes) applies to the other internal elements listed in this mapping.

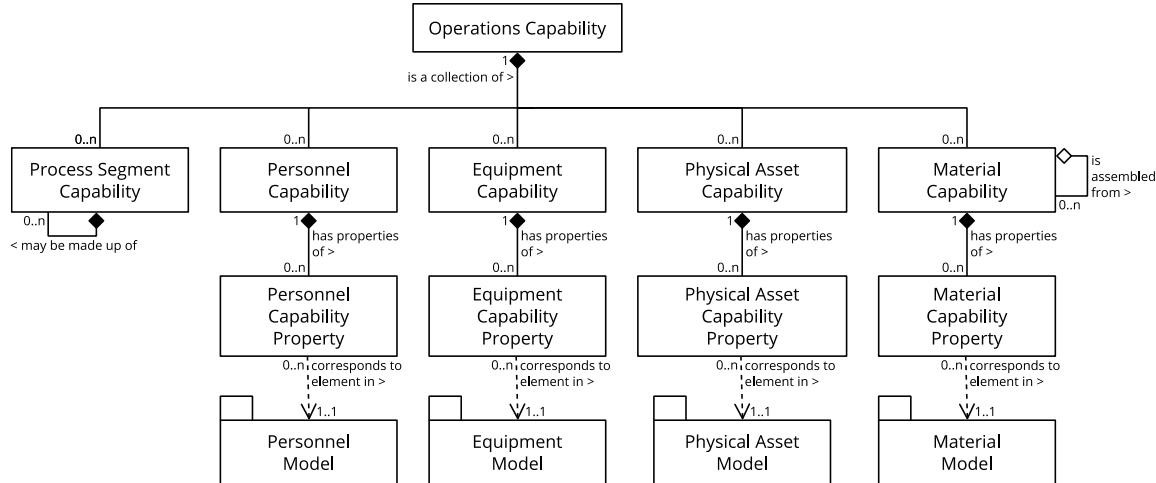


Figure 13: Operations capability model (from [IEC 62264-2], graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Operations Capability	InternalElement	Collection of personnel capabilities, equipment capabilities, physical asset capabilities, material capabilities, and process segment capabilities, for a given slice of time (past, current, or future).
Personnel Capability	InternalElement	Capability of persons or personnel classes that is committed, available, or unattainable for a defined time.
Personnel Capability Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for personnel capabilities.
Equipment Capability	InternalElement	Representation of the capability of equipment or equipment classes that is committed, available, or unattainable for a specific time.
Equipment Capability Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for equipment capabilities.
Physical Asset Capability	InternalElement	Representation of the capability of a physical asset or physical asset class that is committed, available, or unattainable for a specific time.
Physical Asset Capability Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for physical asset capabilities.
Material Capability	InternalElement	Representation of the capability of material that is committed, available, or unattainable for a specific time. Material capability is used for material lots and material sublots.
Material Capability Property	Attribute	Specific properties that are required for material capabilities.

Table 12: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 operations capability model to AML.

3.2.5 Process Segment Capability

Representation of logical grouping of personnel resources, equipment resources, physical asset resources, and material that is committed, available, or unavailable for a defined process segment for a specific time. The model's structure is equivalent to the one of operations capability, except that a process segment capability is defined for a specific process segment. As such, the various capabilities and capability properties described in Table 12 (Clause 3.2.4) provide the same semantics and structure as the ones required for process segment capabilities. A duplication of the mapping is therefore omitted.

A process segment capability is modeled as an internal element with its diverse capabilities modeled as children internal elements. Process segment capabilities must refer to role class "ProcessSegmentCapability" that is defined in the accompanying role class library (AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib). The same (but with their corresponding classes) applies to the other internal elements listed in this mapping.

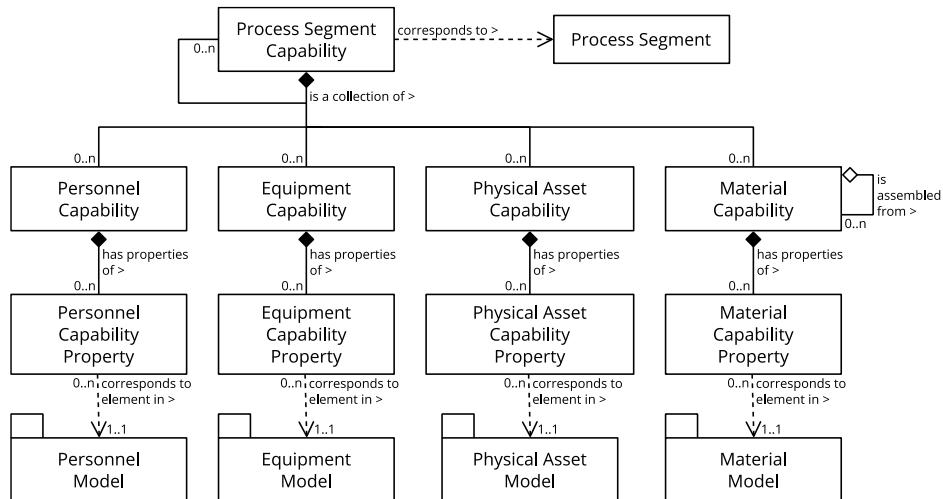


Figure 14: Process segment capability model (from IEC 62264-2), graphically adapted).

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML	Comment
Process Segment Capability	InternalElement	Representation of a logical grouping of personnel resources, equipment resources, physical asset resources, and material that is committed, available, or unavailable for a given process segment for a specific time.

Table 13: Mapping of the IEC 62264-2 process segment capability model to AML.

3.3 Visualization of the Mapping

Figure 15 depicts a visual approach to the mapping of IEC 62264-2 metamodel elements (i) to CAEX metamodel elements and (ii) to existing AutomationML elements of the AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib. IEC 62264-2 elements are located in the center column.

Mappings to the left have the following semantics: “An instance of type <X> of the IEC 62264-2 metamodel is modeled as an instance of type <Y> of the CAEX metamodel”.

Mappings to the right have the following semantics: “A role class that resembles type <X> of the IEC 62264-2 metamodel is a subclass of <Y> of the AutomationML base role class library”. These mappings are complemented by Clause 4.3.1.

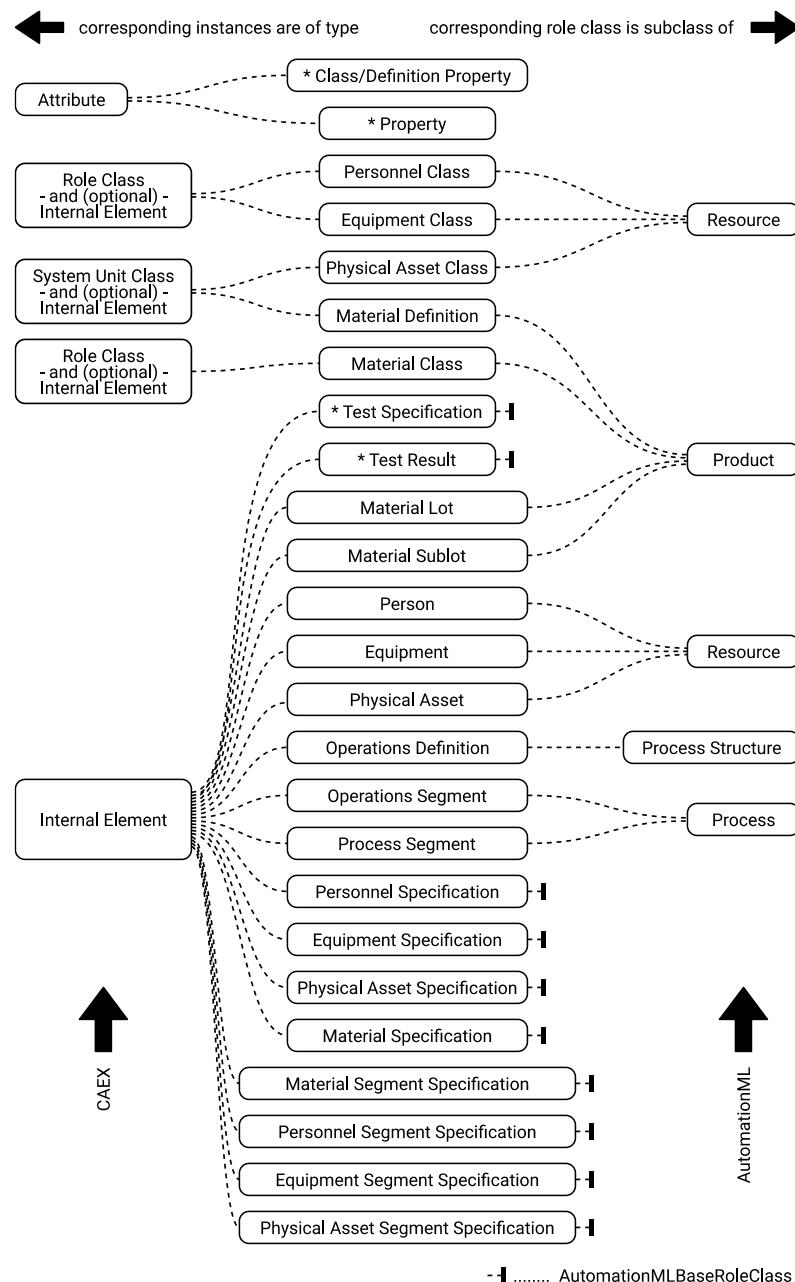


Figure 15: Visualization of the mapping from IEC 62264-2 to the CAEX metamodel (left) and to existing AutomationML elements of the AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib (right).

NOTE: Not all IEC 62264-2 elements have been regarded in Figure 15, but a representative selection.

4 Related AutomationML Libraries

4.1 AutomationML Interface Class Libraries

4.1.1 AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib

Table 14 depicts the interface classes defined in AML parts 1 and 2. With the “ExternalDataConnector” AML defines the basic abstract interface type for referencing external documents. “COLLADAIInterface” and “PLCopenXMLInterface” are two standardized interface classes for referencing elements from COLLADA and PLCopen XML files, respectively.

InterfaceClass Library	InterfaceClass	Description
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib <ul style="list-style-type: none"> AutomationMLBaseInterface Order PortConnector InterlockingConnector PPRConnector ExternalDataConnector <ul style="list-style-type: none"> COLLADAIInterface PLCopenXMLInterface Communication SignallInterface 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> AutomationMLBaseInterface 	Basic abstract interface type, to be used as parent for the description of all AML interface classes.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ExternalDataConnector 	Basic abstract interface type, to be used for the description of connector interfaces referencing external documents. All existing and future connector classes shall be derived directly or indirectly from this class.

Table 14: InterfaceClasses of the AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib.

4.1.2 AutomationMLBPRInterfaceClassLib

Table 15 displays the content of AutomationMLBPRInterfaceClassLib, that deals with the referencing of data outside the scope of AML. Interface class “ExternalDataReference” is a direct successor to the previously stated interface class “ExternalDataConnector”. It contains two attributes: “refURI” (inherited from ExternalDataConnector) gives the URI to the external data file, while “MIMETYPE” provides information about the type of content stored in that location [AML-B-EDR]. This interface class is required for the referencing of externally stored data in B2MML documents (cf. Clause 6).

InterfaceClass Library	InterfaceClass	Description
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> AutomationMLBPRInterfaceClassLib <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ExternalDataReference 	ExternalDataReference	Shall be used in order to reference external documents out of the scope of AutomationML.

Table 15: InterfaceClass of the AutomationMLBPRInterfaceClassLib.

4.2 AutomationML Role Class Libraries

4.2.1 AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib

AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib (cf. Table 16) defines entities that resemble abstractions of concepts defined in IEC 62264, subsumed under the term “Process-Product-Resource” (PPR). It defines abstract role types for non-hierarchical elements (“Process”, “Product”, and “Resource”), as well as for hierarchical elements (“ProcessStructure”, “ProductStructure”, and “ResourceStructure”) [IEC 62714-1]. This is the most generic definition of AML role classes with respect to IEC 62264-2, and as such a corresponding role class defined in this library are used as the super role class of IEC 62264-2 related role classes, if applicable. A mapping of elements from IEC 62264-2 to PPR is given in Clause 4.3.1, a more detailed implementation in AML follows in Clause D.3.

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> RC AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib RC AutomationMLBaseRole <ul style="list-style-type: none"> RC Group RC Facet RC Port <ul style="list-style-type: none"> RC Port-Interfaces RC ConnectionPoint RC Resource RC Product RC Process RC Structure <ul style="list-style-type: none"> RC ProductStructure RC ProcessStructure RC ResourceStructure RC PropertySet 	AutomationMLBaseRole	Basic abstract role type and the base class for all standard or user-defined role classes.
	Resource	Basic abstract role type and the base class for all AML resource roles. It describes plants, equipment, workers or other production resources.
	Product	Basic abstract role type and the base class for all AML product roles. It describes products, product parts or product related materials that are processed in the described plant.
	Process	Basic abstract role class and the base class for all AML process roles. It describes production related processes.
	Structure	Basic abstract role type for objects that serve as structure elements in the plant hierarchy, e.g. a folder, a site or a manufacturing line.
	ProductStructure	Abstract role type for a product oriented object hierarchy.
	ProcessStructure	Abstract role type for a process oriented object hierarchy.
	ResourceStructure	Abstract role type for a resource oriented object hierarchy.

Table 16: Selected RoleClasses of the AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib.

NOTE: Role class “Resource” is the (indirect) base class for elements described in the AutomationMLBMRoleClassLib, AutomationMLCMIRoleClassLib, AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib, and the AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib. It is also the (indirect) base class for non-hierarchical elements in the (non-normative) AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib other than “PLCFacet” and “HMIFacet”.

NOTE: Role class “ResourceStructure” is the (indirect) base class for hierarchical elements in the (non-normative) AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib.

4.2.2 AutomationMLBMRoleClassLib

Table 17 depicts a base role class related to batch manufacturing. The role class “BatchManufacturingEquipment” inherits from AML base role “Resource” and could be used as an additional supported role class for internal elements representing equipment or physical asset items.

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
AutomationMLBMRoleClassLib		
BatchManufacturingEquipment	BatchManufacturingEquipment	Equipment related to batch manufacturing.

Table 17: RoleClass of the AutomationMLBMRoleClassLib.

4.2.3 AutomationMLCMIRoleClassLib

Table 18 depicts a base role class related to continuous manufacturing. The role class “ContManufacturingEquipment” inherits from AML base role “Resource” and could be used as an additional supported role class for internal elements representing equipment or physical asset items.

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
AutomationMLCMIRoleClassLib		
ContManufacturingEquipment	ContManufacturingEquipment	Equipment related to continuous manufacturing.

Table 18: RoleClass of the AutomationMLCMIRoleClassLib.

4.2.4 AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib

Table 19 lists role classes related to discrete manufacturing. The top-level role class “DiscManufacturingEquipment” (from which the other role classes of this library directly inherit) inherits from AML base role “Resource” and could be used as an additional supported role class for internal elements representing equipment or physical asset items.

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib	DiscManufacturingEquipment	Equipment related to discrete manufacturing industries.
DiscManufacturingEquipment	Transport	Equipment that performs transport processes to transfer items.
Storage	Storage	Equipment that is used to buffer products or material temporarily within the plant. It can also be used to feed products or materials into the production process or to export products or materials out of the production process.
Fixture	Fixture	Equipment that reduces the degrees of freedom of an item.
Gate	Gate	Equipment that can block or monitor an entrance, departure, or passage way.
Robot	Robot	Role class used for robots.
Tool	Tool	Equipment used by resources that is necessary for or aids in the performance of an operation on the product.
Carrier	Carrier	Transport equipment that carries items.
Machine	Machine	Mechanic or mechatronic equipment that creates added value on products and is designed expressly to perform specific tasks.
StaticObject	StaticObject	Passive, static items positioned in the production environment.

Table 19: RoleClasses of the AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib.

4.2.5 AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib

Table 20 lists role classes related to control system equipment (applicable to batch, continuous, and discrete manufacturing). The top-level role class “ControlEquipment” (from which the other role classes of this library directly or indirectly inherit) inherits from AML base role “Resource” and could be used as an additional supported role class for internal elements representing equipment or physical asset items.

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib	ControlEquipment	Equipment related to a control system. ControlEquipment can be used for every type of industry.
ControlEquipment	Communication	Items dedicated to communications.
ControlHardware	ControlHardware	Hardware that provides runtime environments.
PC	PC	Any general-purpose computer that provides runtime environments for software being executed on it.
IPC	IPC	Any PC-based computing platform for industrial applications that provides runtime environments for software being executed on it.
EmbeddedDevice	EmbeddedDevice	Any device designed to perform one or a few dedicated software functions. It is embedded as part of another device often including hardware and mechanical parts.
Handheld	Handheld	Any portable, programmable, electronic device with an own power supply for particular applications.
Sensor	Sensor	Role class used for sensors.
Actuator	Actuator	Role class used for actuators.
Controller	Controller	Self-acting functionalities that process signals according to a predefined logic and generate output signals in order to reach an intended behavior of technical processes.
PLC	PLC	Programmable Logic Controller: Programmable control functionality focusing on the processing of signals.
NC	NC	Numerical Control: Programmable control functionality focusing on the processing of numerical signals.
RC	RC	Programmable control functionality driving robots in order to reach an intended behavior of the robot kinematic system and corresponding connected periphery.
PAC	PAC	Programmable Automation Controller: Programmable automation functionality focusing on cross-domain functionality like binary, motion, and continuous control.

Table 20: RoleClasses of the AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib.

4.2.6 AutomationML Extended RoleClass Library (non-normative)

Table 21 lists more specific role classes that are extending corresponding role classes of the previously discussed role class libraries (cf. Clauses 4.2.1 to 4.2.5). All listed role classes (except for "PLCFacet" and "HMIFacet") inherit directly or indirectly from AML base role "Resource" and could be used as an additional supported role class for internal elements representing equipment or physical asset items. In Table 21 only role classes that are specifically relevant for this recommendation are explicitly named and commented: an AML object that resembles an IEC 62264 element of type equipment or equipment class that has the equipment level "Enterprise" shall be associated with the role class "Enterprise" from the AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib (e.g. through the addition of a "supported role class"). The same rule shall apply to the other hierarchical elements of the role based equipment model correspondingly ("Site", "Area", "ProductionLine", ...).

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib	Enterprise	Role class used for business structures.
PLCFacet	Site	Physical, geographical, or logical grouping determined by the enterprise. It may contain areas, production lines, process cells, and production units.
HMIFacet	Area	Physical, geographical, or logical grouping determined by the site. It may contain work centers such as production lines, process cells, production units, and storage zones.
Enterprise	ProductionLine	Equipment for discrete manufacturing at the production line level.
Site	WorkCell	Equipment for discrete manufacturing at the work cell level.
Site	ProcessCell	Equipment for batch manufacturing at the process cell level.
Unit	Unit	Linked chained production plants in batch manufacturing.
ProductionUnit	ProductionUnit	Lowest level of equipment for continuous manufacturing processes.
StorageZone	StorageZone	Work center for material movement equipment.
StorageUnit	StorageUnit	Work unit for material movement equipment.
LiftingTable		
AGV		
Transposer		
CarrierHandlingSystem		
BodyStore		
Lift		
Rollerbed		
StationaryTool		
MovableTool		
ControlCabinet		
IODevice		
HMI		
WarningEquipment		
ActuatingDrive		
MotionController		
Panel		
MeasuringEquipment		
Clamp		
ProcessController		
Loader		
Unloader		

Table 21: RoleClasses of the AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib.

NOTE: Some of the elements in the (non-normative) AML extended role class library are roles that have been derived from IEC 62264-1 (role classes “Site” to “StorageUnit”), but there are two issues with those elements: (i) in the current implementation of the extended role class library it is that the work unit “Unit” is included only with reference to batch manufacturing – however, in IEC 62264-1 “Unit” is the name for work units in batch and in continuous production, and (ii) role classes for generic work cells and work units should be provided (not only the more specific ones: “ProductionLine”, “ProcessCell”, “ProductionUnit”, “StorageZone”, “WorkCell”, “Unit”, and “StorageUnit”), as this is proposed in IEC 62264-1. As such, a corresponding revision of the extended role class library is proposed and might be implemented in future versions of AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib (this is out of scope of this recommendation).

4.2.7 AutomationMLBPRRoleClassLib (non-normative)

Table 22 lists the role class related to the referencing of external documents, as specified in [AML-B-EDR]. This role class serves as the base role class for the role class specifying external B2MML documents. This role class is declared in a dedicated role class library (cf. Clause 5.2).

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
 AutomationMLBPRRoleClassLib  ExternalData	ExternalData	Tagging role class for the referencing of external documents.

Table 22: RoleClass of the AutomationMLBPRRoleClassLib.

4.3 Alignment of IEC 62264-2 and AutomationML

An alignment of IEC 62264-2 with generic PPR role classes is given in Clause 4.3.1, while an alignment with more detailed AutomationML role classes is depicted in Clause 4.3.2. It depends on the implementer’s domain knowledge at which detail he/she wants to annotate his/her elements.

4.3.1 Alignment of IEC 62264-2 and AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib

Role classes “Resource”, “Product”, “Process”, “ProductStructure”, “ProcessStructure”, and “ResourceStructure”, which are defined in the AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib of IEC 62714-1 (cf. Clause 4.2.1), are related to concepts in IEC 62264-2 (cf. Clause 4.2).

A mapping of related concepts from IEC 62264-2 and AML base role classes is given in Table 23 (“AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole” is abbreviated as “BR” for better readability). The other concepts of IEC 62264-2 are not directly related to any of the existing base roles of AML – they are therefore not listed here. The mappings listed here correspond to the inheritance relation of IEC 62264-2 role classes that are defined in Clause 5.3, e.g., role class “BR/Resource” is the super role class of the newly defined IEC 62264 role class “Equipment”.

NOTE: Some of the mappings are also visualized in Figure 15.

IEC 62264-2	Automation ML Base Role Class	Comment
Person	BR/Resource	Representation of a specifically identified individual. A person may be a member of zero or more personnel classes.
Personnel Class	BR/Resource	Representation of a grouping of persons with similar characteristics for a definite purpose such as manufacturing operations definition, scheduling, capability, and performance.
Equipment	BR/Resource	Representation of the elements of the equipment hierarchy model.
Equipment Class	BR/Resource	Representation of a grouping of equipment with similar characteristics.
Physical Asset	BR/Resource	A physical piece of equipment shall be presented as a physical asset. Any physical asset shall be a member of one physical asset class.
Physical Asset Class	BR/Resource	A representation of a grouping of physical assets with similar characteristics for purposes of repair and replacement.
Material Definition	BR/Product	Representation of goods with similar name characteristics for the purpose of manufacturing definition, scheduling, capability and performance.
Material Class	BR/Product	Representation of groupings of material definitions for a definite purpose such as manufacturing operations definition, scheduling, capability and performance.
Material Lot	BR/Product	Uniquely identified specific amount of material, either countable or weighable. A material lot describes the planned or actual total quantity or amount of material available, its current state, and its specific property values.
Material Sublot	BR/Product	Separately identifiable quantity of the same material lot.
Process Segment	BR/Process	Lists the classes of personnel, equipment, physical assets, and material needed, and/or it may present specific resources, such as specific equipment needed for the process segment. A process segment may list the quantity of the resource needed.
Operations Definition	BR/Structure/ProcessStructure	Resources required to perform a specified operation.
Operations Segment	BR/Process	Information needed to quantify a segment for a specific operation. An operations segment identifies, references, or corresponds to a process segment.
Operations Schedule	BR/Structure/ProcessStructure	Request for operations to be performed. An operations request shall be made up of one or more operations requests.
Operations Request	BR/Structure/ProcessStructure	Request for an element of an operation schedule. An operations request contains the information required by manufacturing to fulfill the scheduled operation.
Segment Requirement	BR/Process	An operations request shall be made up of one or more segment requirements. Each segment requirement shall correspond to or reference an identified operations segment or process segment.
Requested Segment Response	BR/Process	Identification of the information sent back as a result of the operations request.

IEC 62264-2	Automation ML Base Role Class	Comment
Operations Performance	BR/Structure/ProcessStructure	Performance of the requested operations.
Operations Response	BR/Structure/ProcessStructure	Response from manufacturing that is associated with an operations request. There may be one or more operations responses for a single operations request if the manufacturing facility needs to split the operations request into smaller elements.
Segment Response	BR/Process	Information on a segment of an operations response.
Operations Capability	BR/Process	Collection of personnel capabilities, equipment capabilities, physical asset capabilities, material capabilities, and process segment capabilities, for a given slice of time (past, current, or future) and defined as committed, available, and unattainable.
Process Segment Capability	BR/Process	Representation of a logical grouping of personnel resources, equipment resources, physical asset resources, and material that is committed, available, or unavailable for a defined process segment for a specific time.

Table 23: Alignment of IEC 62264-2 with AML base role classes.

4.3.2 Alignment of IEC 62264-2 and Detailed Normative AutomationML Role Class Libraries

In addition to the generic role classes discussed in Clause 4.3.1, more detailed role classes are defined in IEC 62714-2 in the role class libraries “AutomationMLBMRoleClassLib”, “AutomationMLCMIRoleClassLib”, “AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib”, and “AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib” (cf. Clauses 4.2.2 - 4.2.5).

All the role classes defined in these libraries inherit directly or indirectly from the base role class (cf. Clause 4.2.1) “AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Resource” and can be applied to any of the IEC 62264-2 concepts listed in Table 24. Application of any of these role classes can be realized as additional “supported role class”.

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML
Equipment	AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment
Equipment Class	AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/Communication
Physical Asset	AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/ControlHardware
Physical Asset Class	AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/ControlHardware/PC AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/ControlHardware/IPC AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/ControlHardware/EmbeddedDevice AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/ControlHardware/Handheld AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/Sensor AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/Actuator AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/Controller AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/Controller/PLC AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/Controller/NC AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/Controller/RC AutomationMLCSRoleClassLib/ControlEquipment/Controller/PAC AutomationMLBMRoleClassLib/BatchManufacturingEquipment AutomationMLCMIRoleClassLib/ContManufacturingEquipment AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib/DiscManufacturingEquipment AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib/DiscManufacturingEquipment/Transport AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib/DiscManufacturingEquipment/Storage AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib/DiscManufacturingEquipment/Fixture AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib/DiscManufacturingEquipment/Gate AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib/DiscManufacturingEquipment/Robot AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib/DiscManufacturingEquipment/Tool AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib/DiscManufacturingEquipment/Carrier AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib/DiscManufacturingEquipment/Machine AutomationMLDMIRoleClassLib/DiscManufacturingEquipment/StaticObject

Table 24: Alignment of IEC 62264-2 with more detailed normative AML role classes.

4.3.3 Alignment of IEC 62264-2 and AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib

Even more detailed role classes are defined in IEC 62714-2 in the “AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib” role class library (cf. Clause 4.2.6). All the role classes defined in this library (except for the two “Facets”) inherit directly or indirectly from role class “AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Resource” (cf. Clause 4.2.1) and can be applied to any of the IEC 62264-2 concepts listed in Table 25. Application of any of these role classes can be realized as additional “supported role class”.

IEC 62264-2	AutomationML
Equipment	AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Enterprise
Equipment Class	AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Site
Physical Asset	AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Area
Physical Asset Class	AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/ProductionLine AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/WorkCell AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/ProcessCell AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Unit AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/ProductionUnit AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/StorageZone AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/StorageUnit AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Turntable AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Conveyor AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Conveyor/BeltConveyor AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Conveyor/RollConveyor AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Conveyor/ChainConveyor AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Conveyor/PalletConveyor AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Conveyor/OverheadConveyor AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/LiftingTable AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/AGV AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Transposer AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/CarrierHandlingSystem AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/BodyStore AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Lift AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Rollerbed AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/StationaryTool AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/MovableTool AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/ControlCabinet AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/IODevice AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/HMI AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/HMI/WarningEquipment AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/ActuatingDrive AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/MotionController AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Panel AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/MeasuringEquipment AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Clamp AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/ProcessController AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Loader AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Unloader

Table 25: Alignment of IEC 62264-2 with the (non-normative) AML extended role class lib.

5 AML Libraries for Supporting IEC 62264

5.1 Interface Class Library AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib

Interface class library AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib (cf. Table 26) specifies a number of interface classes required for the modeling of IEC 62264 information with AML by enabling required cross-references.

InterfaceClass Library	RoleClass	Description
IC AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ↳ HierarchyScopeConnector ↳ ResourceConnector ↳ EquipmentAssetConnector ↳ DependencyConnector ↳ TestConnector 	HierarchyScopeConnector	HierarchyScopeConnector shall be used in order to reference hierarchy scope elements from other entities such as e.g., process segments.
	ResourceConnector	ResourceConnector shall be used in order to reference basic or complex resources from complex entities such as e.g., a person or personnel class from a personnel segment specification of a process segment.
	EquipmentAssetConnector	EquipmentAssetConnector shall be used in order to link equipment and physical assets to equipment asset mappings.
	DependencyConnector	DependencyConnector shall be used in order to link process or operations segments to process or operations segment dependencies, respectively.
	TestConnector	TestConnector shall be used in order to link resources and resource types to test specifications and test results.

Table 26: InterfaceClasses needed for supporting concepts of IEC 62264, subsumed in the AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib.

InterfaceClass “HierarchyScopeConnector” shall be used as specified in Table 27: one instance of this interface class is to be bound to an element of type “HierarchyScope” (cf. Clause 5.3.1), while another instance of this interface class is to be instantiated at a “scopable” IEC 62264 element. Then, an internal link is to be created, thus reifying the relation (cf. Figure 16).

Class Name	HierarchyScopeConnector
Description	The InterfaceClass “HierarchyScopeConnector” shall be used in order to reference hierarchy scope elements from other entities such as e.g., process segments.
Parent Class	AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib/HierarchyScopeConnector

Table 27: InterfaceClass HierarchyScopeConnector.

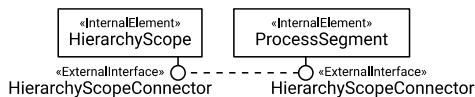


Figure 16: Usage example for interface class HierarchyScopeConnector.

InterfaceClass “ResourceConnector” shall be used as specified in Table 28: one instance of this interface class is to be bound to an element of any of the basic resource types (e.g., equipment or equipment class), while another instance of this interface class is to be instantiated at a “referring” IEC 62264 element (e.g., equipment segment specification). Then, an internal link is to be created, thus reifying the relation (cf. Figure 17). Another use case is the referencing of complex structures, e.g., for expressing the relation of an operations segment to a process segment.

Class Name	ResourceConnector
Description	The InterfaceClass “ResourceConnector” shall be used in order to reference basic resources from complex entities such as e.g., a personnel segment specification of a process segment referring to a person or personnel class.
Parent Class	AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib/ResourceConnector

Table 28: InterfaceClass ResourceConnector.

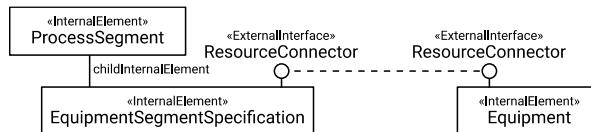


Figure 17: Usage example for interface class ResourceConnector.

InterfaceClass “EquipmentAssetConnector” shall be used as specified in Table 29: one instance of this interface class is bound to an equipment, while the other is bound to an equipment asset mapping. At the same time, another instance of this interface class is bound to a physical asset. Then, two internal links are created that interlink (i) the equipment with the equipment asset mapping and (ii) the physical asset with the equipment asset mapping (cf. Figure 18).

Class Name	EquipmentAssetConnector
Description	The InterfaceClass “EquipmentAssetConnector” shall be used in order to link Equipment and PhysicalAssets to EquipmentAssetMappings.
Parent Class	AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib/EquipmentAssetConnector

Table 29: InterfaceClass EquipmentAssetConnector.

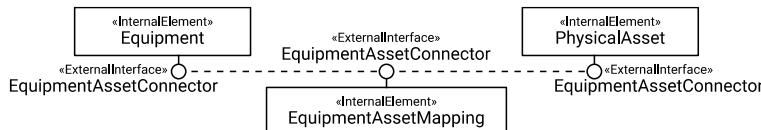


Figure 18: Usage example of interface class EquipmentAssetConnector.

InterfaceClass “DependencyConnector” shall be used as specified in Table 30: one instance of this interface class is bound to a process segment or operations segment, while the other is bound to a process segment dependency or operations segment dependency, respectively. At the same time, another instance of this interface class is bound to another process segment or operations segment. Then, two internal links are created that interlink the process segments or operations segments with the process segment dependency or the operations segment dependency, respectively (cf. Figure 19).

Class Name	DependencyConnector
Description	The InterfaceClass “DependencyConnector” shall be used in order to link ProcessSegments and OperationsSegments to Process/OperationsSegmentDependencies.
Parent Class	AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib/DependencyConnector

Table 30: InterfaceClass DependencyConnector.

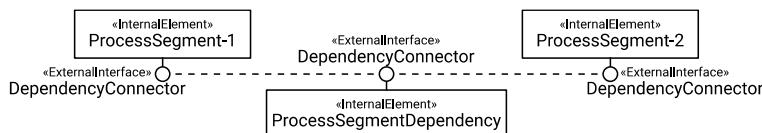


Figure 19: Usage example of interface class DependencyConnector.

InterfaceClass “TestConnector” shall be used as specified in Table 31: one instance of this interface class is bound to a resource or resource type (e.g., person, personnel class, equipment, equipment class), while the other is bound to a test specification or test result. Then, internal links are created to interlink the resource or resource type with the test specification or test result, as well as the test result with the test specification (cf. Figure 20). If the test specification needs to specify a resource property or resource type property, it shall instantiate an attribute with the same name as the one referring to, but prefixed with “ts:”. If the test result needs to specify a resource property or resource type property, it shall instantiate an attribute with the same name as the one referring to, but prefixed with “tr:”.

Class Name	TestConnector
Description	The InterfaceClass “TestConnector” shall be used in order to link ProcessSegments and OperationsSegments to Process/OperationsSegmentDependencies.
Parent Class	AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib/TestConnector

Table 31: InterfaceClass TestConnector.

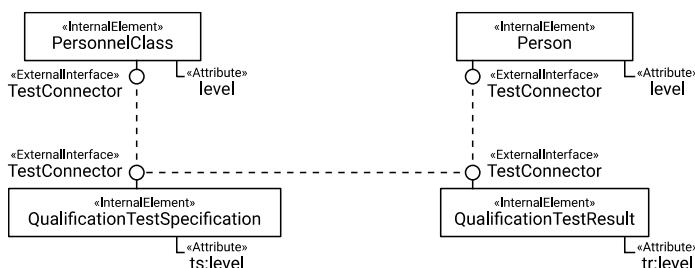


Figure 20: Usage example for interface class TestConnector.

5.2 Role Class Library AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib

Role class library “AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib”, as depicted in Table 32, is encapsulating role classes that are required for the use of externally linked B2MML documents. It is not required in case all IEC 62264 information is modeled within AML.

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
 AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib	B2mmlData	References external B2MML documents.
 B2mmlData		

Table 32: RoleClass “B2mmlData” needed for referencing a specific B2MML document, encapsulated in the AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib.

NOTE: IEC 62264 elements such as Personnel Class and Equipment Class that are normally modeled as instances of type RoleClass in AML documents cannot hold instances of type InternalElement that represent external documents. Therefore, they shall be instantiated additionally as an internal element that refers to the correct IEC 62264 role class and this internal element holds another internal element representing an external document [AML-B-EDR].

RoleClass “B2mmlData” shall be used as specified in Table 33, and as further specified in Clause 6. It corresponds to the specification given in [AML-B-EDR], as it is used to tag an AML element as representing an external document. This role class is to be referenced by AML elements that should reference external files through the external interfaces of interface class “ExternalDataReference”.

Class Name	B2mmlData
Description	The RoleClass “B2mmlData” shall be used in order to reference external B2MML documents, using the mechanism defined in BPR External Data Reference.
Parent Class	AutomationMLBPRRoleClassLib/ExternalData
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData
Attributes	None

Table 33: RoleClass B2mmlData.

5.3 Role Class Library AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib	HierarchyScope	Role class used for hierarchy scopes.
HierarchyScope	PersonnelModel	Abstract role class used for structuring personnel roles.
PersonnelModel	PersonnelClass	Role class used for personnel classes.
PersonnelClass	Person	Role class used for persons.
Person	QualificationTestSpecification	Role class used for qualification test specifications.
QualificationTestSpecification	QualificationTestResult	Role class used for qualification test results.
QualificationTestResult	EquipmentModel	Abstract role class used for structuring equipment roles.
EquipmentModel	EquipmentClass	Role class used for equipment classes.
EquipmentClass	Equipment	Role class used for equipment.
Equipment	EquipmentCapabilityTestSpecification	Role class used for equipment capability test specifications.
EquipmentCapabilityTestSpecification	EquipmentCapabilityTestResult	Role class used for equipment capability test results.
EquipmentCapabilityTestResult	PhysicalAssetModel	Abstract role class for structuring physical asset roles.
PhysicalAssetModel	PhysicalAssetClass	Role class used for physical asset classes.
PhysicalAssetClass	PhysicalAsset	Role class used for physical assets.
PhysicalAsset	PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestSpecification	Role class used for physical asset capability test specifications.
PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestSpecification	PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestResult	Role class used for physical asset capability test results.
PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestResult	EquipmentAssetMapping	EquipmentAssetMapping is used to link physical assets to equipment.
EquipmentAssetMapping	MaterialModel	Abstract role class for structuring material roles.
MaterialModel	MaterialClass	Role class used for material classes.
MaterialClass	MaterialDefinition	Role class used for material definitions.
MaterialDefinition	MaterialLot	Role class used for material lots.
MaterialLot	MaterialSublot	Role class used for material sublots.
MaterialSublot	MaterialTestSpecification	Role class used for material test specifications.
MaterialTestSpecification	MaterialTestResult	Role class used for material test results.
MaterialTestResult	MaterialAssembly	Role class used for specifying material assemblies.
MaterialAssembly	ProcessSegmentModel	Abstract role class for structuring process segments.
ProcessSegmentModel	ProcessSegment	Role class used for process segments.
ProcessSegment	PersonnelSegmentSpecification	Role class used for personnel segment specifications.
PersonnelSegmentSpecification	EquipmentSegmentSpecification	Role class used for equipment segment specifications.
EquipmentSegmentSpecification	PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecification	Role class used for physical asset segment specifications.
PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecification	MaterialSegmentSpecification	Role class used for material segment specifications.
MaterialSegmentSpecification	ProcessSegmentDependency	ProcessSegmentDependency is used to link process segments.
ProcessSegmentDependency	OperationsDefinitionModel	Abstract role class for structuring operations definitions.
OperationsDefinitionModel	OperationsDefinition	Role class used for operations definitions.
OperationsDefinition	OperationsMaterialBill	Role class used for operations material bills.
OperationsMaterialBill	OperationsMaterialBillItem	Role class used for operations material bill items.
OperationsMaterialBillItem	OperationsSegment	Role class used for operations segments.
OperationsSegment	PersonnelSpecification	Role class used for personnel specifications.
PersonnelSpecification	EquipmentSpecification	Role class used for equipment specifications.
EquipmentSpecification	PhysicalAssetSpecification	Role class used for physical asset specifications.
PhysicalAssetSpecification	MaterialSpecification	Role class used for material specifications.
MaterialSpecification	OperationsSegmentDependency	OperationsSegmentDependency is used to link operations segments.
OperationsSegmentDependency	OperationsScheduleModel	Abstract role class for structuring operations schedules.
OperationsScheduleModel	OperationsSchedule	Role class used for operations schedules.
OperationsSchedule	OperationsRequest	Role class used for operations requests.
OperationsRequest	SegmentRequirement	Role class used for segment requirements.
SegmentRequirement	PersonnelRequirement	Role class used for personnel requirements.
PersonnelRequirement	EquipmentRequirement	Role class used for equipment requirements.
EquipmentRequirement	PhysicalAssetRequirement	Role class used for physical asset requirements.

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
MaterialRequirement	ProcessSegmentModel	Abstract role class for structuring process segment roles.
RequestedSegmentResponse	ProcessSegment	Role class used for process segments.
OperationsPerformanceModel	PersonnelSegment Specification	Role class used for personnel segment specifications.
OperationsPerformance	EquipmentSegment Specification	Role class used for equipment segment specifications.
OperationsResponse	PhysicalAssetSegment Specification	Role class used for physical asset segment specifications.
SegmentResponse	MaterialSegment Specification	Role class used for material segment specifications.
PersonnelActual	ProcessSegment Dependency	Role class used for process segment dependencies.
EquipmentActual	OperationsDefinition Model	Abstract role class used for structuring operations definition roles.
PhysicalAssetActual	OperationsDefinition	Role class used for operations definitions.
MaterialActual	OperationsMaterialBill	Role class used for operations material bills.
OperationsCapabilityModel	OperationsMaterialBill Item	Role class used for operations material bill items.
OperationsCapability	OperationsSegment	Role class used for operations segments.
PersonnelCapability	PersonnelSpecification	Role class used for personnel specifications.
EquipmentCapability	EquipmentSpecification	Role class used for equipment specifications.
PhysicalAssetCapability	PhysicalAsset Specification	Role class used for physical asset specifications.
MaterialCapability	MaterialSpecification	Role class used for material specifications.
ProcessSegmentCapability	OperationsSegment Dependency	Role class used for operations segment dependencies.
	OperationsSchedule Model	Abstract role class used for structuring operations schedule roles.
	OperationsSchedule	Role class used for operations schedules.
	OperationsRequest	Role class used for operations requests.
	SegmentRequirement	Role class used for segment requirements.
	PersonnelRequirement	Role class used for personnel requirements.

RoleClass Library	RoleClass	Description
	EquipmentRequirement	Role class used for equipment requirements.
	PhysicalAsset Requirement	Role class used for physical asset requirements.
	MaterialRequirement	Role class used for material requirements.
	RequestedSegment Response	Role class used for requested segment responses.
	OperationsPerformance Model	Abstract role class used for structuring operations performance roles.
	OperationsPerformance	Role class used for operations performances.
	OperationsResponse	Role class used for operations responses.
	SegmentResponse	Role class used for segment responses.
	PersonnelActual	Role class used for personnel actual.
	EquipmentActual	Role class used for equipment actual.
	PhysicalAssetActual	Role class used for physical asset actual.
	MaterialActual	Role class used for material actual.
	OperationsCapability Model	Abstract role class used for structuring operations capability roles.
	OperationsCapability	Role class used for operations capabilities.
	PersonnelCapability	Role class used for personnel capabilities.
	EquipmentCapability	Role class used for equipment capabilities.
	PhysicalAssetCapability	Role class used for physical asset capabilities.
	MaterialCapability	Role class used for material capabilities.
	ProcessSegment Capability	Role class used for process segment capabilities.

Table 34: RoleClasses needed for supporting concepts from IEC 62264, subsumed in the AutomationML/IEC62264RoleClassLib.

Some role classes that are defined in Clauses 5.3.1 to 5.3.11 declare attributes; these attributes have been derived from IEC 62264. All these attributes are optional (it is not required to duplicate information that is stored in other documents) – however, if any of these attributes is used in an AML document its value(s) shall be equal to the value(s) in the referenced B2MML document.

5.3.1 Hierarchy Scope

RoleClass “HierarchyScope” shall be used as specified in Table 35. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “HierarchyScope” as a supported role class or role requirement. The relation to a piece of equipment is realized by adding a mirror object of this equipment as a child internal element to this hierarchy scope. Further, a hierarchy scope may contain other hierarchy scope elements as child internal elements.

Class Name	HierarchyScope	
Description	Role class used for hierarchy scopes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/HierarchyScope	
Attributes (optional)	equipmentElementLevel (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the equipment level if the equipment element is defined.

Table 35: Role class *HierarchyScope*.

5.3.2 Personnel

RoleClass “PersonnelModel” shall be used as specified in Table 36. It is the base structuring role class for all personnel roles, without specific semantics on its own. In the context of IEC 62264, one of the concrete sub roles (or any user defined sub role thereof) of PersonnelModel shall be used as a starting point for AML models.

Class Name	PersonnelModel	
Description	Abstract role class used for structuring personnel roles.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PersonnelModel	
Attributes	None	

Table 36: Role class *PersonnelModel*.

RoleClass “PersonnelClass” shall be used as specified in Table 37. Instances of this role class shall be realized as role classes, specifying “PersonnelClass” as parent class. Personnel class instances can be realized as internal elements following a singleton pattern, i.e., only up to one internal element can be created for each personnel class. This internal element can be used e.g., for linking within instance hierarchies, or for referencing external data. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	PersonnelClass	
Description	Role class used for personnel classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Resource	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PersonnelModel/PersonnelClass	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Unique identification of a specific personnel class. These are not necessarily job titles, but identify classes that are referenced in other parts of the model.

Table 37: Role class PersonnelClass.

User defined attributes for personnel classes (“PersonnelClassProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 38. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property.

Description	User defined attributes for personnel classes. May be tested by the execution of a qualification test specification.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PersonnelModel/PersonnelClass	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the specific property, unique under the scope of the parent personnel class object.

Table 38: Attribute type PersonnelClassProperty.

RoleClass “Person” shall be used as specified in Table 39. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “Person” as a supported role class or role requirement. The (optional) relation to one or more personnel classes is realized by referencing these personnel classes as supported role classes. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	Person	
Description	Role class used for persons.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Resource	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PersonnelModel/Person	
Attributes (optional)	id (type="xs:string")	A unique identification of a specific person, within the scope of the information exchanged (e.g. production capability, production schedule, and production performance).
	name (type="xs:string")	The name of the individual.

Table 39: Role class Person.

User defined attributes for persons (“PersonProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 40. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property.

Description	User defined attributes for persons. May be tested by the execution of a qualification test specification.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PersonnelModel/Person	
Attributes	id (type="xs:string")	An identification of the specific property.

Table 40: Attribute type PersonProperty.

RoleClass “QualificationTestSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 41. It can be instantiated anywhere in the instance hierarchy as an internal element specifying “QualificationTestSpecification” as supported role class or role requirement. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

An external interface of type “TestConnector” has to be instantiated on a test specification and on a person or personnel class internal element; then, these external interfaces need to be interlinked. That way, the test specification is linked to that resource or resource type. If the test specification needs to specify a resource property or resource type property, it shall instantiate an attribute with the same name as the one to be referred, but prefixed with “ts:” (cf. Clause 5.1).

Class Name	QualificationTestSpecification	
Description	Role class used for qualification test specifications.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PersonnelModel/QualificationTestSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of a test for certifying one or more values for one or more person properties.
	version (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the version of the qualification test specification.

Table 41: Role class QualificationTestSpecification.

RoleClass “QualificationTestResult” shall be used as specified in Table 42. It can be instantiated anywhere in the instance hierarchy as an internal element specifying “QualificationTestSpecification” as supported role class or role requirement. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Usually, it represents a specific test result for a resource property. If the test result needs to specify such a resource property, it shall instantiate an attribute with the same name as the one to be referred, but prefixed with “tr:” (cf. Clause 5.1).

Class Name	QualificationTestResult	
Description	Role class used for qualification test results.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PersonnelModel/QualificationTestResult	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	A unique instance identification that records the results from the execution of a test identified in a qualification test specification for a specific person.
	date (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date and time of the qualification test.
	result (type=“xs:string”)	The result of the qualification test. The unit of measure of the associated test result, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.
	expiration (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date of the expiration of the qualification.

Table 42: Role class QualificationTestResult.

5.3.3 Equipment

RoleClass “EquipmentModel” shall be used as specified in Table 43. It is the base structuring role class for all equipment roles. In the context of IEC 62264, one of the concrete child roles (or any user defined sub role thereof) of EquipmentModel shall be used as a starting point for AML models.

Class Name	EquipmentModel
Description	Abstract role class used for structuring equipment roles.
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel
Attributes	None

Table 43: Role class *EquipmentModel*.

RoleClass “EquipmentClass” shall be used as specified in Table 44. Instances of this role class shall be realized as role classes, specifying “EquipmentClass” as parent class. Equipment class instances can be realized as internal elements following a singleton pattern, i.e., only up to one internal element can be created for each equipment class. This internal element can be used e.g., for linking within instance hierarchies, or for referencing external data. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	EquipmentClass	
Description	Role class used for equipment classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Resource	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/EquipmentClass	
Attributes (optional)	id (type="xs:string")	A unique identification of a specific equipment class, within the scope of the information exchanged (e.g. production capability, production schedule, production performance).
	equipmentLevel (type="xs:string")	An identification of the level in the role based equipment hierarchy. One of (nominal scaled constraint): “Enterprise”, “Site”, “Area”, “Work Center”, “Process Cell”, “Production Unit”, “Production Line”, “Storage Zone”, “Work Unit”, “Unit”, “Work Cell”, “Storage Unit”.

Table 44: Role class *EquipmentClass*.

User defined attributes for equipment classes (“EquipmentClassProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 45. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property.

Description	User defined attributes for equipment classes. May be tested by the execution of an equipment capability test specification.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/EquipmentClass	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the specific property.

Table 45: Attribute type EquipmentClassProperty.

RoleClass “Equipment” shall be used as specified in Table 46. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “Equipment” as a supported role class or role requirement. The (optional) relation to one or more equipment classes is realized by referencing these classes as supported role classes. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	Equipment	
Description	Role class used for equipment.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Resource	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/Equipment	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	A unique identification of a specific piece of equipment, within the scope of the information exchanged (manufacturing operations definition, scheduling, capability and performance).
	equipmentLevel (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the level in the role based equipment hierarchy. One of (nominal scaled constraint): “Enterprise”, “Site”, “Area”, “Work Center”, “Process Cell”, “Production Unit”, “Production Line”, “Storage Zone”, “Work Unit”, “Unit”, “Work Cell”, “Storage Unit”.

Table 46: Role class Equipment.

User defined attributes for equipment (“EquipmentProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 47. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property.

Description	User defined attributes for equipment. May be tested by the execution of an equipment capability test specification.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/Equipment	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the specific property.

Table 47: Attribute type EquipmentProperty.

RoleClass “EquipmentCapabilityTestSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 48. It can be instantiated anywhere in the instance hierarchy as an internal element specifying “EquipmentCapabilityTestSpecification” as supported role class or role requirement. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

An external interface of type “TestConnector” has to be instantiated on a test specification and on an equipment or equipment class internal element; then, these external interfaces need to be interlinked. That way, the test specification is linked to that resource or resource type. If the test specification needs to specify a resource property or resource type property, it shall instantiate an attribute with the same name as the one to be referred, but prefixed with “ts:” (cf. Clause 5.1).

Class Name	EquipmentCapabilityTestSpecification	
Description	Role class used for equipment capability test specifications.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/ EquipmentCapabilityTestSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of a test for certifying one or more values for one or more equipment properties.
	version (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the version of the capability test specification.

Table 48: Role class *EquipmentCapabilityTestSpecification*.

RoleClass “EquipmentCapabilityTestResult” shall be used as specified in Table 49. It can be instantiated anywhere in the instance hierarchy as an internal element specifying “EquipmentCapabilityTestResult” as supported role class or role requirement. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Usually, it represents a specific test result for a resource property. If the test result needs to specify such a resource property, it shall instantiate an attribute with the same name as the one to be referred, but prefixed with “tr:” (cf. Clause 5.1).

Class Name	EquipmentCapabilityTestResult	
Description	Role class used for equipment capability test results.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/EquipmentCapabilityTestResult	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	A unique instance identification that records the results from the execution of a test identified in a capability test specification for a specific piece of equipment.
	date (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date and time of the capability test.
	result (type=“xs:string”)	The result of the capability test. The unit of measure of the associated test result, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.
	expiration (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date of the expiration of the capability.

Table 49: Attribute type EquipmentCapabilityTestResult.

5.3.4 Physical Asset

RoleClass “PhysicalAssetModel” shall be used as specified in Table 50. It is the base structuring role class for all physical asset roles. In the context of IEC 62264, one of the concrete child roles (or any user defined sub role thereof) of PhysicalAssetModel shall be used as a starting point for AML models.

Class Name	PhysicalAssetModel
Description	Abstract role class used for structuring physical asset roles.
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel
Attributes	None

Table 50: Role class PhysicalAssetModel.

RoleClass “PhysicalAssetClass” shall be used as specified in Table 51. Instances of this role class shall be realized as system unit classes, specifying “PhysicalAssetClass” as a supported role class. Physical asset class instances can be realized as internal elements following a singleton pattern, i.e., only up to one internal element can be created for each physical asset class. This internal element can be used e.g., for linking within instance hierarchies. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	PhysicalAssetClass	
Description	Role class used for physical asset classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Resource	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAssetClass	
Attributes (optional)	manufacturer (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the manufacturer.
	id (type=“xs:string”)	The manufacturer’s identification of the specific physical asset class.
	description (type=“xs:string”)	Additional information about the physical asset class.

Table 51: Role class PhysicalAssetClass.

User defined attributes for physical asset classes (“PhysicalAssetClassProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 52. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property.

Description	User defined attributes for physical asset classes. May be tested by the execution of a physical asset capability test specification.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAssetClass	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the specific property.

Table 52: Attribute type PhysicalAssetClassProperty.

RoleClass “PhysicalAsset” shall be used as specified in Table 53. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PhysicalAsset” as a supported role class or role requirement. The relation to the physical asset class is realized by specifying the RefBaseSystemUnitPath with the path to the corresponding system unit class. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	PhysicalAsset	
Description	Role class used for physical assets.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Resource	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAsset	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Defines a unique identification of a physical asset.
	physicalLocation (type=“xs:string”)	Actual physical location of the physical asset.
	fixedAssetId (type=“xs:string”)	Contains a unique identification for financial tracking as required by laws or regulations.
	vendorId (type=“xs:string”)	Contains a vendor's serial number.

Table 53: Role class PhysicalAsset.

User defined attributes for physical assets (“PhysicalAssetProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 54. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property.

Description	User defined attributes for physical assets. May be tested by the execution of a physical asset capability test specification.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAsset	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the specific property.

Table 54: Attribute type PhysicalAssetProperty.

RoleClass “PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 55. It can be instantiated anywhere in the instance hierarchy as an internal element specifying “PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestSpecification” as supported role class or role requirement. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

An external interface of type “TestConnector” has to be instantiated on a test specification and on a physical asset or physical asset class internal element; then, these external interfaces need to be interlinked. That way, the test specification is linked to that resource or resource type. If the test specification needs to specify a resource property or resource type property, it shall instantiate an attribute with the same name as the one to be referred, but prefixed with “ts:” (cf. Clause 5.1).

Class Name	PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestSpecification	
Description	Role class used for physical asset capability test specifications.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the specific physical asset capability test specification.
	version (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the version of the capability test specification.

Table 55: Role class PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestSpecification.

RoleClass “PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestResult” shall be used as specified in Table 56. It can be instantiated anywhere in the instance hierarchy as an internal element specifying “PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestResult” as supported role class or role requirement. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Usually, it represents a specific test result for a resource property. If the test result needs to specify such a resource property, it shall instantiate an attribute with the same name as the one to be referred, but prefixed with “tr:” (cf. Clause 5.1).

Class Name	PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestResult	
Description	Role class used for physical asset capability test results.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestResult	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the specific physical asset capability test result.
	date (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date and time of the capability test.
	result (type=“xs:string”)	The result of the capability test. The unit of measure of the associated test result, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.
	expiration (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date of the expiration of the capability.

Table 56: Attribute type PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestResult.

RoleClass “EquipmentAssetMapping” shall be used as specified in Table 57: an instance of this class is instantiated as an internal element somewhere in the instance hierarchy (could be realized in a dedicated *EquipmentAssetMapping* “folder”). The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

External interfaces of type “EquipmentAssetConnector” have to be instantiated on (i) an equipment and a physical asset and (ii) on an equipment asset mapping; then, these external interfaces need to be interlinked. That way, the physical asset is linked to an equipment through a reified equipment asset mapping relation (cf. Clause 5.1).

Class Name	EquipmentAssetMapping	
Description	RoleClass “EquipmentAssetMapping” shall be used to link physical assets to equipment.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/EquipmentAssetMapping	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the specific equipment asset mapping.
	startTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The starting time of the association.
	endTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The ending time of the association.

Table 57: RoleClass EquipmentAssetMapping.

5.3.5 Material

RoleClass “MaterialModel” shall be used as specified in Table 58. It is the base structuring role class for all material roles. In the context of IEC 62264, one of the concrete child roles (or any user defined sub role thereof) of MaterialModel shall be used as a starting point for AML models.

Class Name	MaterialModel
Description	Abstract role class used for structuring material roles.
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel
Attributes	None

Table 58: Role class MaterialModel.

RoleClass “MaterialClass” shall be used as specified in Table 59. Instances of this role class shall be realized as role classes, specifying “MaterialClass” as parent class. Material class instances can be realized as internal elements following a singleton pattern, i.e., only up to one internal element can be created for each material class. This internal element can be used e.g., for linking within instance hierarchies, or for referencing external data. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	MaterialClass	
Description	Role class used for material classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Product	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialClass	
Attributes (optional)	id (type="xs:string")	A unique identification of a specific material class, within the scope of the information exchanged (e.g. production capability, production schedule, production performance)
	assemblyType (type="xs:string")	Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Physical” or “Logical”. Physical: the components of the assembly are physically connected or in the same area. Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily physically connected or in the same area.
	assemblyRelationship (type="xs:string")	Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Permanent” or “Transient”. Permanent: an assembly that is not intended to be split during the production process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production, such as a pallet of different materials or a batch kit.

Table 59: Role class MaterialClass.

User defined attributes for material classes (“MaterialClassProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 60. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property.

Description	User defined attributes for material classes. May be tested by the execution of a material test specification.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialClass	
Attributes	id (type="xs:string")	An identification of a specific material class property.

Table 60: Attribute type MaterialClassProperty.

RoleClass “MaterialDefinition” shall be used as specified in Table 61. Instances of this role class shall be realized as system unit classes, specifying “MaterialDefinition” as a supported role class. The (optional) relation to one or more material classes is realized by referencing the material classes as supported role classes. Material definition instances can be realized as internal elements following a singleton pattern, i.e., only up to one internal element can be created for each material definition. This internal element can be used e.g., for linking within instance hierarchies. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	MaterialDefinition	
Description	Role class used for material definitions.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Product	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialDefinition	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	A unique identification of a specific material definition, within the scope of the information exchanged (e.g. operations capability, operations schedule, operations performance).
	assemblyType (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Physical” or “Logical”. Physical: the components of the assembly are physically connected or in the same area. Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily physically connected or in the same area.
	assemblyRelationship (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Permanent” or “Transient”. Permanent: an assembly that is not intended to be split during the production process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production, such as a pallet of different materials or a batch kit.

Table 61: Role class MaterialDefinition.

User defined attributes for material definitions (“MaterialDefinitionProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 62. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property.

Description	User defined attributes for material definitions. May be tested by the execution of a material test specification.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialDefinition	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the specific material definition property.

Table 62: Attribute type MaterialDefinitionProperty.

RoleClass “MaterialLot” shall be used as specified in Table 63. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “MaterialLot” as a supported role class or role requirement. The relation to the material definition is realized by specifying the RefBaseSystemUnitPath pointing to the corresponding system unit class. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	MaterialLot	
Description	Role class used for material lots – a uniquely identified specific amount of material, either countable or weighable. A material lot describes the planned or actual total quantity or amount of material available, its current state, and its specific property values.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Product	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialLot	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	A unique identification of a specific material lot, within the scope of the information exchanged (e.g. operations capability, operations schedule, operations performance).
	assemblyType (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Physical” or “Logical”. Physical: the components of the assembly are physically connected or in the same area. Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily physically connected or in the same area.
	assemblyRelationship (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Permanent” or “Transient”. Permanent: an assembly that is not intended to be split during the production process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production, such as a pallet of different materials or a batch kit.
	status (type=“xs:string”)	Status of the material lot, e.g. “released”, “approved”, “blocked”, “in process”, “in quality check”.
	storageLocation (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the storage location or a physical location of the material lot.
	quantity (type=“xs:string”)	The quantity of the material lot. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 63: Role class MaterialLot.

NOTE: If material lots are merged or absorbed (e.g. blended), then this is a new material lot [IEC 62264-2].

NOTE: Representation of non-lot controlled items (for example consumable materials or bulk materials), can be represented in the material lot model through the use of a unique ID for each different material definition [IEC 62264-2].

NOTE: If non-lot controlled items are maintained in multiple locations then the information can be represented in the material subplot model through the use of a unique subplot ID for each different location and material definition [IEC 62264-2].

User defined attributes for material lots and sublots (“MaterialLotProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 64. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property.

Description	User defined attributes for material lots and sublots. May be tested by the execution of a material test specification.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialLot - or - AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialSublot	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the specific material lot property.

Table 64: Attribute type MaterialLotProperty.

RoleClass “MaterialSublot” shall be used as specified in Table 65. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “MaterialSublot” as a supported role class or role requirement. The relation to the parent material (sub)lot is realized by inserting the material subplot as a child element of a material (sub)lot internal element. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	MaterialSublot	
Description	Role class used for material sublots – a separately identifiable quantity of the same material lot. A material lot may be stored in separately identifiable quantities. All material sublots are part of the same material lot, so they have the material lot's property values. A material subplot may be just a single item.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Product	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialSublot	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	A unique identification of a specific material subplot, within the scope of the information exchanged (e.g. production capability, production schedule, production performance).
	assemblyType (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Physical” or “Logical”. Physical: the components of the assembly are physically connected or in the same area. Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily physically connected or in the same area.
	assemblyRelationship (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Permanent” or “Transient”. Permanent: an assembly that is not intended to be split during the production process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production, such as a pallet of different materials or a batch kit.
	status (type=“xs:string”)	Status of the material subplot, e.g. “released”, “approved”, “blocked”, “in process”, “in quality check”.
	storageLocation (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the storage location or a physical location of the material subplot.
	quantity (type=“xs:string”)	The quantity of the material subplot. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 65: Role class MaterialSublot.

NOTE: If material sublots are merged or absorbed (e.g. blended), then this is a new material subplot [IEC 62264-2].

NOTE: Assemblies are collections or sets of related elements. Assemblies are represented as relationships between elements and attributes of the elements. Each assembly element has its own identity and properties, such as a material lot which has its own identity and properties. An object with an assembly (material lot, material subplot, material class, and material definition) shall contain the list of other elements that make up the assembly. Many assembly type industries, such as automobile manufacturing, airplane assembly, and furniture manufacturing use the concept of assemblies. A produced material, with a unique identification and properties, is made up of other materials with their own unique identification and properties [IEC 62264-2].

RoleClass “MaterialTestSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 66. It can be instantiated anywhere in the instance hierarchy as an internal element specifying “MaterialTestSpecification” as supported role class or role requirement. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

An external interface of type “TestConnector” has to be instantiated on a test specification and on a material class, material definition, or material lot internal element; then, these external interfaces need to be interlinked. That way, the test specification is linked to that resource or resource type. If the test specification needs to specify a resource property or resource type property, it shall instantiate an attribute with the same name as the one to be referred, but prefixed with “ts:” (cf. Clause 5.1).

Class Name	MaterialTestSpecification	
Description	Role class used for material test specifications.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialTestSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of a test for certifying one or more values for one or more material properties.
	version (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the version of the material test specification.

Table 66: Role class MaterialTestSpecification.

RoleClass “MaterialTestResult” shall be used as specified in Table 67. It can be instantiated anywhere in the instance hierarchy as an internal element specifying “MaterialTestResult” as supported role class or role requirement. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Usually, it represents a specific test result for a material lot property. If the test result needs to specify such a material lot property, it shall instantiate an attribute with the same name as the one to be referred, but prefixed with “tr:” (cf. Clause 5.1).

Class Name	MaterialTestResult		
Description	Role class used for material test results.		
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole		
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialTestResult		
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	A unique instance identification that records the results from the execution of a test identified in a material test specification for a lot or subplot.	
	date (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date and time of the material test.	
	result (type=“xs:string”)	The value or list of values returned from the performance of the material test. The unit of measure of the associated test result, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.	
	expiration (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date of the expiration of the test results.	

Table 67: Attribute type MaterialTestResult.

RoleClass “MaterialAssembly” shall be used as specified in Table 68. It holds internal elements of either material class, material definition, material lot, or material subplot type (often, but not exclusively, in terms of mirror objects). Instances of this role class shall be realized as a child internal element of the material type that defines an assembly, specifying “MaterialAssembly” as a supported role class or role requirement. A material assembly of a material class might only contain other material classes, a material definition assembly might only contain material definitions. A material assembly of a material lot or subplot might each contain instances of both material lots and material sublots.

The “MaterialAssembly” role class is also used to specify assembly relationships of the following entities: Material Segment Specification (cf. Clause 5.3.6), Material Specification and Operations Material Bill Item (cf. Clause 5.3.7), Material Requirement (cf. Clause 5.3.8), Material Actual (cf. Clause 5.3.9), and Material Capability (cf. Clause 5.3.10).

Class Name	MaterialAssembly		
Description	Role class used for specifying material class and material definition assemblies.		
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole		
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialAssembly		
Attributes	None		

Table 68: Role class MaterialAssembly.

5.3.6 Process Segment

RoleClass “ProcessSegmentModel” shall be used as specified in Table 69. It is the base structuring role class for all process segment roles. In the context of IEC 62264, one of the concrete child roles (or any user defined sub role thereof) of ProcessSegmentModel shall be used as a starting point for AML models.

Class Name	ProcessSegmentModel
Description	Abstract role class used for structuring process segment roles.
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel
Attributes	None

Table 69: Role class ProcessSegmentModel.

RoleClass “ProcessSegment” shall be used as specified in Table 70. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “ProcessSegment” as a supported role class or role requirement. Nested process segments can be modeled directly as child internal elements or they can be defined as child internal element in terms of a mirror object.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	ProcessSegment						
Description	Role class used for process segment classes.						
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Process						
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/ProcessSegment						
Attributes (optional)	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>id (type="xs:string")</td> <td>A unique identification of a process segment, within the scope of the information exchanged (e.g. operations capability, operations schedule, operations performance).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>operationsType (type="xs:string")</td> <td>Describes the category of the activity. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the activity contains several categories of process segments.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>duration (type="xs:decimal")</td> <td>Duration of process segment, if known. The unit of measure of the duration, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if defined.</td> </tr> </table>	id (type="xs:string")	A unique identification of a process segment, within the scope of the information exchanged (e.g. operations capability, operations schedule, operations performance).	operationsType (type="xs:string")	Describes the category of the activity. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the activity contains several categories of process segments.	duration (type="xs:decimal")	Duration of process segment, if known. The unit of measure of the duration, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if defined.
id (type="xs:string")	A unique identification of a process segment, within the scope of the information exchanged (e.g. operations capability, operations schedule, operations performance).						
operationsType (type="xs:string")	Describes the category of the activity. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the activity contains several categories of process segments.						
duration (type="xs:decimal")	Duration of process segment, if known. The unit of measure of the duration, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if defined.						

Table 70: Role class ProcessSegment.

Parameters for process segments (“ProcessSegmentParameter”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 71. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the parameter.

Description	Process segment parameters for process segments.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/ProcessSegment	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the process segment parameter.

Table 71:Attribute type ProcessSegmentParameter.

RoleClass “PersonnelSegmentSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 72. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “ProcessSegment” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PersonnelSegmentSpecification” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the personnel class or person that is involved in the given process segment. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	PersonnelSegmentSpecification	
Description	Role class used for personnel segment specification classes – personnel resources that are required for a process segment.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/PersonnelSegmentSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	personnelUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected use of the personnel class or person, e.g. “Allocated” or “Certified”.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the personnel resource required for the parent process segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 72:Role class PersonnelSegmentSpecification.

User defined attributes for personnel segment specifications (“PersonnelSegmentSpecificationProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 73. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	User defined attributes for personnel segment specifications.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/PersonnelSegmentSpecification	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of a property of the associated person property or personnel class property.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the personnel resource required, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 73: Attribute type PersonnelSegmentSpecificationProperty.

RoleClass “EquipmentSegmentSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 74. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “ProcessSegment” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “EquipmentSegmentSpecification” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the equipment class or equipment that is involved in the given process segment. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	EquipmentSegmentSpecification	
Description	Role class used for equipment segment specification classes – equipment resources that are required for a process segment.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/EquipmentSegmentSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	equipmentUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected use of the equipment class or equipment in the context of the process segment, e.g. “Part Milling”, “Remove Motor”, “Run Test”, and “Material Movement”.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of resources required, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 74: Role class EquipmentSegmentSpecification.

User defined attributes for equipment segment specifications (“EquipmentSegmentSpecificationProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 75. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	User defined attributes for equipment segment specifications.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/ EquipmentSegmentSpecification	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of a property of the associated equipment property or equipment class property.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of resources required. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 75: Attribute type EquipmentSegmentSpecificationProperty.

RoleClass “PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 76. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “ProcessSegment” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecification” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the physical asset class or physical asset that is involved in the given process segment. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecification	
Description	Role class used for physical asset segment specification classes – physical asset resources that are required for a process segment.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/ PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	physicalAssetUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected use of the physical asset class or physical asset in the context of the process segment.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of resources required, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 76: Role class PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecification.

User defined attributes for physical asset segment specifications (“PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecificationProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 77. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	User defined attributes for physical asset segment specifications.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/ PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecification	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of a property of the associated physical asset property or physical asset class property.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of resources required. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 77: Attribute type PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecificationProperty.

RoleClass “MaterialSegmentSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 78. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “ProcessSegment” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “MaterialSegmentSpecification” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the material class or material definition that is involved in the given process segment. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	MaterialSegmentSpecification	
Description	Role class used for material segment specification classes – material resources that are required for a process segment.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/MaterialSegmentSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	assemblyType (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Physical” or “Logical”. Physical: the components of the assembly are physically connected or in the same area. Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily physically connected or in the same area.
	assemblyRelationship (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Permanent” or “Transient”. Permanent: an assembly that is not intended to be split during the production process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production, such as a pallet of different materials or a batch kit.
	materialUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the material use. One of (nominal scaled constraint): “Consumable”, “Material Consumed”, and “Material Produced”.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of resources required. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 78: Role class MaterialSegmentSpecification.

User defined attributes for material segment specifications ("MaterialSegmentSpecificationProperty") shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 79. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one ("quantity") holds the resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	User defined attributes for material segment specifications.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/ MaterialSegmentSpecification	
Attributes	id (type="xs:string")	An identification of a property of the associated material definition property or material class property.
	quantity (type="xs:decimal")	Specifies the amount of resources required, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the "Unit" attribute, if applicable.

Table 79: Attribute type MaterialSegmentSpecificationProperty.

RoleClass "ProcessSegmentDependency" shall be used as specified in Table 80. Its purpose is the specification of a process segment dependency that is relevant for the given process segment. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements anywhere in the instance hierarchy, specifying "ProcessSegmentDependency" as a supported role class or role requirement. The referenced process segment is specified through internal linking, by adding an instance of interface class "DependencyConnector" (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a "DependencyConnector" is already existing, it can be reused.

The "description" property is to be instantiated as a "Description" header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	ProcessSegmentDependency	
Description	Role class used for process segment dependency classes – process dependencies that are independent of any particular product or operations task.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/ ProcessSegmentDependency	
Attributes (optional)	id (type="xs:string")	The identification of the unique instance of the process segment dependency.
	dependencyType (type="xs:string")	Defines the execution dependency constraints of one segment by another segment.
	dependencyFactor (type="xs:decimal")	Factor used by dependency. The unit of measure of the dependency factor, is to be specified as the "Unit" attribute, if defined.

Table 80: Role class ProcessSegmentDependency.

5.3.7 Operations Definition

RoleClass “OperationsDefinitionModel” shall be used as specified in Table 81. It is the base structuring role class for all operations definition roles. In the context of IEC 62264, one of the concrete child roles (or any user defined sub role thereof) of OperationsDefinitionModel shall be used as a starting point for AML models.

Class Name	OperationsDefinitionModel
Description	Abstract role class used for structuring operations definition roles.
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel
Attributes	None

Table 81: Role class OperationsDefinitionModel.

RoleClass “OperationsDefinition” shall be used as specified in Table 82. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “OperationsDefinition” as a supported role class or role requirement. Operations definitions usually hold child internal elements of type “OperationsMaterialBill” and “OperationsSegment”. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	OperationsDefinition	
Description	Role class used for operations definition classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Structure/ProcessStructure	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/OperationsDefinition	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Uniquely identifies the operations definition.
	version (type=“xs:string”)	An identification of the version of the operations definition.
	operationsType (type=“xs:string”)	Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the operations definition contains several types of operations requests and/or segment requirements.
	workDefinitionId (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the external work definition associated with this operations definition.
	billOfResourceId (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the external bill of resources associated with this operations definition.

Table 82: Role class OperationsDefinition.

RoleClass “OperationsMaterialBill” shall be used as specified in Table 83. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsDefinition” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “OperationsMaterialBill” as a supported role class or role requirement. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	OperationsMaterialBill	
Description	Role class used for operations material bill classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/OperationsMaterialBill	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Unique identification of a manufacturing bill.

Table 83: Role class OperationsMaterialBill.

RoleClass “OperationsMaterialBillItem” shall be used as specified in Table 84. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsMaterialBill” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “OperationsMaterialBillItem” as a supported role class or role requirement. Operations material bill items may be made up of further operations material bill items (often in terms of mirror child objects). In addition, an operations material bill item shall hold a mirror child internal element of type “MaterialSpecification” in order to specify the concrete material resource represented by this operations material bill item. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	OperationsMaterialBillItem	
Description	Role class used for operations material bill item classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/OperationsMaterialBillItem	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Unique identification of a bill item.
	useType (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the use of the material. One of (nominal scaled constraint): “Consumed” or “Produced”. Consumed: Indicates that bill items are all consumed materials. Produced: Indicates that bill items are all produced materials.
	assemblyType (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Physical” or “Logical”. Physical: the components of the assembly are physically connected or in the same area. Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily physically connected or in the same area.
	assemblyRelationship (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Permanent” or “Transient”. Permanent: an assembly that is not intended to be split during the production process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production, such as a pallet of different materials or a batch kit.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of resources required. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 84: Role class *OperationsMaterialBillItem*.

RoleClass “OperationsSegment” shall be used as specified in Table 85. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsDefinition” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “OperationsSegment” as a supported role class or role requirement. Nested operations segments can be modeled directly as child internal elements or they can be defined as child internal element in terms of a mirror object. Usually, operations segment hold child internal elements for resource specification or of type “OperationsSegmentDependency”. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Related process segments are specified through internal linking, by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	OperationsSegment	
Description	Role class used for operations segment classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Process	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/OperationsSegment	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Unique identification of a specific segment.
	duration (type=“xs:string”)	Duration of segment, if known. The unit of measure of the duration, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if defined.
	operationsType (type=“xs:string”)	Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the operations segment contains several types of operations requests and/or segment requirements.
	workDefinitionId (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the external work definition associated with this operations segment.

Table 85: Role class OperationsSegment.

Parameter specifications for operations segments (“ParameterSpecification”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 86. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the parameter.

Description	Parameter specification for operations segments.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/OperationsSegment	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the parameter for a specific segment.

Table 86: Attribute type ParameterSpecification.

RoleClass “PersonnelSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 87. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsSegment” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PersonnelSpecification” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the personnel class or person that is involved in the given operations segment. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	PersonnelSpecification	
Description	Role class used for personnel specification classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/PersonnelSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	personnelUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected use of the personnel class or person.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of personnel resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 87: Role class PersonnelSpecification.

Properties for personnel specifications (“PersonnelSpecificationProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 88. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Parameter specification for personnel specifications.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/PersonnelSpecification	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of a property of the associated person property or personnel class property for a specific segment.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of personnel resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 88: Attribute type PersonnelSpecificationProperty.

RoleClass “EquipmentSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 89. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsSegment” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “EquipmentSpecification” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the equipment class or equipment that is involved in the given operations segment. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	EquipmentSpecification	
Description	Role class used for equipment specification classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/EquipmentSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	equipmentUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected use of the equipment class or equipment.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of equipment resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 89: Role class *EquipmentSpecification*.

Properties for equipment specifications (“EquipmentSpecificationProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 90. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Parameter specification for equipment specifications.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/EquipmentSpecification	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of a property of the associated equipment property or equipment class property for a specific segment.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of equipment resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 90: Attribute type *EquipmentSpecificationProperty*.

RoleClass “PhysicalAssetSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 91. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsSegment” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PhysicalAssetSpecification” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the physical asset class or physical asset that is involved in the given operations segment. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

Class Name	PhysicalAssetSpecification	
Description	Role class used for physical asset specification classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/PhysicalAssetSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	physicalAssetUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected use of the physical asset class or physical asset.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of physical asset resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 91: Role class PhysicalAssetSpecification.

Properties for physical asset specifications (“PhysicalAssetSpecificationProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 92. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Parameter specification for physical asset specifications.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/PhysicalAssetSpecification	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of a property of the associated physical asset property or physical asset class property for a specific segment.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of physical asset resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 92: Attribute type PhysicalAssetSpecificationProperty.

RoleClass “MaterialSpecification” shall be used as specified in Table 93. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsSegment” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “MaterialSpecification” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the material class or material definition that is involved in the given operations segment. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

NOTE: Typically, either a material class or material definition is specified [IEC 62264-2].

Class Name	MaterialSpecification	
Description	Role class used for material specification classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/MaterialSpecification	
Attributes (optional)	materialUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected material use. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Material Consumed”, “Material Produced”, or “Consumable”.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of material resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.
	assemblyType (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Physical” or “Logical”. Physical: the components of the assembly are physically connected or in the same area. Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily physically connected or in the same area.
	assemblyRelationship (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Permanent” or “Transient”. Permanent: an assembly that is not intended to be split during the production process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production, such as a pallet of different materials or a batch kit.

Table 93: Role class MaterialSpecification.

Properties for material specifications (“MaterialSpecificationProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 94. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Parameter specification for material specifications.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/MaterialSpecification	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated material property for a specific segment.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of material resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 94: Attribute type MaterialSpecificationProperty.

RoleClass “OperationsSegmentDependency” shall be used as specified in Table 95. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsSegment” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “OperationsSegmentDependency” as a supported role class or role requirement. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The referenced operations segment is specified through internal linking, by adding an instance of interface class “DependencyConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “DependencyConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

Class Name	OperationsSegmentDependency	
Description	Role class used for operations segment dependency classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsDefinitionModel/OperationsSegmentDependency	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the unique instance of the operations segment dependency.
	dependencyType (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the execution dependency constraints of one segment by another segment.
	dependencyFactor (type=“xs:string”)	Factor used by dependency. The unit of measure of the dependency factor, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if defined.

Table 95: Role class OperationsSegmentDependency.

5.3.8 Operations Schedule

RoleClass “OperationsScheduleModel” shall be used as specified in Table 96. It is the base structuring role class for all operations schedule roles. In the context of IEC 62264, one of the concrete child roles (or any user defined sub role thereof) of OperationsScheduleModel shall be used as a starting point for AML models.

Class Name	OperationsScheduleModel
Description	Abstract role class used for structuring operations schedule roles.
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel
Attributes	None

Table 96: Role class OperationsScheduleModel.

RoleClass “OperationsSchedule” shall be used as specified in Table 97. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “OperationsSchedule” as a supported role class or role requirement. Child internal elements include mainly elements of type “OperationsRequest”. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	OperationsSchedule	
Description	Role class used for operations schedule classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Structure/ProcessStructure	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/OperationsSchedule	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Uniquely identifies the operations schedule and could include version and revision identification.
	operationsType (type=“xs:string”)	Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the operations definition contains several types of operations requests and/or segment requirements.
	startTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The starting time for the associated operations schedule, if applicable.
	endTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The ending time for the associated operations schedule, if applicable.
	publishedDate (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date and time on which the operations schedule was published or generated.
	scheduledState (type=“xs:string”)	Indicates the state of the operations schedule. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Forecast” or “Released”. Forecast: the requirements have not been released for use. Released: the requirements have been released for use.

Table 97: Role class OperationsSchedule.

RoleClass “OperationsRequest” shall be used as specified in Table 98. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsSchedule” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “OperationsRequest” as a supported role class or role requirement. Operations requests usually hold child internal elements of type “SegmentRequirement”. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

A related operations definition is specified through internal linking, by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	OperationsRequest	
Description	Role class used for operations request classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Structure/ProcessStructure	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/OperationsRequest	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Unique identification of the operations request.
	operationsType (type=“xs:string”)	Describes the category of operations. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the operations definition contains several types of operations requests and/or segment requirements.
	startTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	When operation is to be started operations schedule, if applicable.
	endTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	When operation is to be completed, if applicable.
	priority (type=“xs:string”)	The priority of the request, if applicable.
	requestState (type=“xs:string”)	Indicates the state of the operations request. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Forecast” or “Released”. Forecast: the requirements have not been released for use. Released: the requirements have been released for use.

Table 98: Role class OperationsRequest.

RoleClass “SegmentRequirement” shall be used as specified in Table 99. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsRequest” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “SegmentRequirement” as a supported role class or role requirement. Nested segment requirements can be modeled directly as child internal elements or they can be defined as child internal element in terms of a mirror object. Typical child internal elements of segment requirements are the resource requirement classes specified below. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

A related operations segment or process segment is specified through internal linking, by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	SegmentRequirement	
Description	Role class used for segment requirement classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Process	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/SegmentRequirement	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Unique identification of the segment requirement.
	operationsType (type=“xs:string”)	Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the operations definition contains several types of operations requests and/or segment requirements.
	earliestStartTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The expected earliest start time of this segment requirement, if applicable.
	latestEndTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The expected latest ending time of this segment requirement, if applicable.
	duration (type=“xs:decimal”)	The expected duration of this segment requirement, if applicable. Note: this should match the associated segment duration. The unit of measure of the duration, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.
	segmentState (type=“xs:string”)	Indicates the state of the segment request. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Forecast” or “Released”. Forecast: the requirements have not been released for use. Released: the requirements have been released for use.

Table 99: Role class SegmentRequirement.

Parameters for segment requirements (“SegmentParameter”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 100. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the parameter.

Description	Parameter specification for segment requirements.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/SegmentRequirement	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the segment parameter.

Table 100: Attribute type SegmentParameter.

RoleClass “PersonnelRequirement” shall be used as specified in Table 101. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “SegmentRequirement” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PersonnelRequirement” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the personnel class or person that is involved in the given segment requirement. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

NOTE: Typically, either personnel class or person is specified, but not both [IEC 62264-2].

Class Name	PersonnelRequirement	
Description	Role class used for personnel requirement classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/PersonnelRequirement	
Attributes (optional)	personnelUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected use of the personnel class or person.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of personnel resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the person and personnel class sets. The unit of measure of the quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 101: Role class PersonnelRequirement.

Properties for personnel requirements (“PersonnelRequirementProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 102. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for personnel requirements.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/ PersonnelRequirement	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated person property or personnel class property for a specific segment requirement.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of the property required for the parent personnel requirement, if applicable. The unit of measure of the quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 102: Attribute type PersonnelRequirementProperty.

RoleClass “EquipmentRequirement” shall be used as specified in Table 103. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “SegmentRequirement” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “EquipmentRequirement” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the equipment class or equipment that is involved in the given segment requirement. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

NOTE: Typically, either equipment class or equipment is specified, but not both [IEC 62264-2].

Class Name	EquipmentRequirement	
Description	Role class used for equipment requirement classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/ EquipmentRequirement	
Attributes (optional)	equipmentUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected use of the equipment class or equipment.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of equipment resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the equipment and equipment class sets. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.
	equipmentLevel (type=“xs:string”)	A definition of the level of the associated element of the equipment model.

Table 103: Role class EquipmentRequirement.

Properties for equipment requirements (“EquipmentRequirementProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 104. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for equipment requirements.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/ EquipmentRequirement	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated equipment property or equipment class property for a specific segment requirement.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of equipment property required for the parent equipment requirement, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 104: Attribute type *EquipmentRequirementProperty*.

RoleClass “PhysicalAssetRequirement” shall be used as specified in Table 105. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “SegmentRequirement” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PhysicalAssetRequirement” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the physical asset class or physical asset that is involved in the given segment requirement. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

NOTE: Typically, either physical asset class or physical asset is specified, but not both [IEC 62264-2].

Class Name	PhysicalAssetRequirement	
Description	Role class used for physical asset requirement classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/ PhysicalAssetRequirement	
Attributes (optional)	physicalAssetUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected use of the physical asset class or physical asset.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of physical asset resources required for the parent segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the physical asset and physical asset class sets. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.
	equipmentLevel (type=“xs:string”)	A level definition for the associated element in the hierarchy of the physical asset model.

Table 105: Role class *PhysicalAssetRequirement*.

Properties for physical asset requirements (“PhysicalAssetRequirementProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 106. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for physical asset requirements.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/PhysicalAssetRequirement	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated physical asset property or physical asset class property for a specific segment requirement.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of physical asset property required for the parent physical asset requirement, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 106: Attribute type PhysicalAssetRequirementProperty.

RoleClass “MaterialRequirement” shall be used as specified in Table 107. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “SegmentRequirement” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “MaterialRequirement” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the material class, material definition, material lot, or material subplot that is involved in the given segment requirement. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

NOTE: Typically, either material class, material definition, material lot, or material subplot is specified [IEC 62264-2].

NOTE: If material lots (or sublots) are merged or absorbed (e.g. blended), then this is a new material lot [IEC 62264-2].

Class Name	MaterialRequirement	
Description	Role class used for material requirement classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/MaterialRequirement	
Attributes (optional)	materialUse (type=“xs:string”)	Identifies the use of the material.
	storageLocation (type=“xs:string”)	Identifies the proposed location of the material, if applicable.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of material to be used, if applicable. Applies to each member of the material lot, material definition, or material class sets. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.
	assemblyType (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Physical” or “Logical”. Physical: the components of the assembly are physically connected or in the same area. Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily physically connected or in the same area.
	assemblyRelationship (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Permanent” or “Transient”. Permanent: an assembly that is not intended to be split during the production process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production, such as a pallet of different materials or a batch kit.

Table 107: Role class MaterialRequirement.

Properties for material requirements (“MaterialRequirementProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 108. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for material requirements.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/MaterialRequirement	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of a property of the associated material definition property or material class property for a specific segment requirement.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of material to be produced, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 108: Attribute type MaterialRequirementProperty.

RoleClass “RequestedSegmentResponse” shall be used as specified in Table 109. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsRequest” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “RequestedSegmentResponse” as a supported role class or role requirement. Requested segment responses may hold a child internal element (typically a mirror element) of type “ProcessSegment” specifying the corresponding process segment. The same concept applies to associated elements of type “OperationsDefinition”.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	RequestedSegmentResponse	
Description	Role class used for requested segment response classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsScheduleModel/RequestedSegmentResponse	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Uniquely identifies the instance of a process segment executed.
	operationsType (type=“xs:string”)	Describes the category of operations. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the operations response contains several categories of segment responses.
	actualStartTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The actual start time of this segment response.
	actualEndTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The actual end time of this segment response.
	segmentState (type=“xs:string”)	

Table 109: Role class RequestedSegmentResponse.

5.3.9 Operations Performance

RoleClass “OperationsPerformanceModel” shall be used as specified in Table 110. It is the base structuring role class for all operations performance roles. In the context of IEC 62264, one of the concrete child roles (or any user defined sub role thereof) of OperationsPerformanceModel shall be used as a starting point for AML models.

Class Name	OperationsPerformanceModel
Description	Abstract role class used for structuring operations performance roles.
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel
Attributes	None

Table 110: Role class OperationsPerformanceModel.

RoleClass “OperationsPerformance” shall be used as specified in Table 111. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “OperationsPerformance” as a supported role class or role requirement. An element of type “OperationsPerformance” may define a child internal element of type “OperationsSchedule” (typically as mirror object) in order to relate the associated operations schedule. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	OperationsPerformance	
Description	Role class used for operations performance classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Structure/ProcessStructure	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/OperationsPerformance	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Uniquely identifies the operations performance and could include version and revision identification.
	operationsType (type=“xs:string”)	Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the operations performance contains several categories of operations responses and/or segment responses.
	startTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The starting time for the associated operations performance, if applicable.
	endTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The ending time for the associated operations performance, if applicable.
	performanceState (type=“xs:string”)	Indicates the state of the operations performance. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Ready”, “Completed”, “Aborted”, or “Holding”.
	publishedDate (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date and time on which the operations performance was published or generated.

Table 111: Role class OperationsPerformance.

RoleClass “OperationsResponse” shall be used as specified in Table 112. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsPerformance” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “OperationsResponse” as a supported role class or role requirement. An operations response typically holds child elements of type “SegmentResponse”. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

A related operations request or operations definition is specified through internal linking, by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	OperationsResponse	
Description	Role class used for operations response classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Structure/ProcessStructure	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/OperationsResponse	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Uniquely identifies the operations response.
	operationsType (type=“xs:string”)	Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the operations response contains several categories of segment responses.
	startTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The starting time of this operations response.
	endTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The ending time of this operations response.
	responseState (type=“xs:string”)	Indicates the state of the operations response. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Ready”, “Completed”, “Aborted”, or “Holding”.

Table 112: Role class OperationsResponse.

RoleClass “SegmentResponse” shall be used as specified in Table 113. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsResponse” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “SegmentResponse” as a supported role class or role requirement. Nested segment responses can be modeled directly as child internal elements or they can be defined as child internal element in terms of a mirror object. The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

A related segment requirement, operations segment or process segment is specified through internal linking, by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

NOTE: *The same process segment can be referenced multiple times in a segment response [IEC 62264-2].*

Class Name	SegmentResponse	
Description	Role class used for segment response classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Process	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/SegmentResponse	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Uniquely identifies the instance of a process segment executed.
	operationsType (type=“xs:string”)	Describes the category of operations. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Production”, “Maintenance”, “Quality”, “Inventory”, or “Mixed”. “Mixed” shall be used when the operations response contains several categories of segment responses.
	actualStartTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The actual start time of this segment response.
	actualEndTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The actual end time of this segment response.
	segmentState (type=“xs:string”)	Indicates the state of the segment response. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Ready”, “Completed”, “Aborted”, or “Holding”.

Table 113: Role class SegmentResponse.

Data for segment responses (“SegmentData”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 114. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. A sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the data.

Description	Data specification for segment responses.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/SegmentResponse	
Attributes (optional)	id (type="xs:string")	Identification of the segment data.

Table 114: Attribute type SegmentData.

RoleClass “PersonnelActual” shall be used as specified in Table 114. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “SegmentResponse” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PersonnelActual” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the personnel class or person that is involved in the given segment response. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

NOTE: Typically, either personnel class or person is specified, but not both [IEC 62264-2].

Class Name	PersonnelActual	
Description	Role class used for personnel actual classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/PersonnelActual	
Attributes (optional)	personnelUse (type="xs:string")	Defines the actual use of the personnel class or person.
	quantity (type="xs:decimal")	Specifies the amount of personnel resources used in the parent segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the person or personnel class sets. The unit of measure of the quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 115: Role class PersonnelActual.

Properties for personnel actuals (“PersonnelActualProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 116. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for personnel actuals.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/PersonnelActual	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated person property or personnel class property for a specific segment response.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of personnel resources used in the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 116: Attribute type PersonnelActualProperty.

RoleClass “EquipmentActual” shall be used as specified in Table 117. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “SegmentResponse” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “EquipmentActual” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the equipment class or equipment that is involved in the given segment response. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

NOTE: Typically, either equipment class or equipment is specified, but not both [IEC 62264-2].

Class Name	EquipmentActual	
Description	Role class used for equipment actual classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/EquipmentActual	
Attributes (optional)	equipmentUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the actual use of the equipment class or equipment.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of equipment resources used in the parent segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the equipment or equipment class sets. The unit of measure of the quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 117: Role class EquipmentActual.

Properties for equipment actuals (“EquipmentActualProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 118. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for equipment actuals.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/EquipmentActual	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated equipment property or equipment class property for a specific segment response.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of equipment resources used in the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 118: Attribute type EquipmentActualProperty.

RoleClass “PhysicalAssetActual” shall be used as specified in Table 119. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “SegmentResponse” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PhysicalAssetActual” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the physical asset class or physical asset that is involved in the given segment response. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

NOTE: Typically, either physical asset class or physical asset is specified, but not both [IEC 62264-2].

Class Name	PhysicalAssetActual	
Description	Role class used for physical asset actual classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/PhysicalAssetActual	
Attributes (optional)	physicalAssetUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the actual use of the physical asset class or physical asset. Example for maintenance: Repaired, Removed, Replacement, Calibrated, Modified/Improved.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of physical asset resources used in the parent segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the physical asset or physical asset class sets. The unit of measure of the quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 119: Role class PhysicalAssetActual.

Properties for physical asset actuals (“PhysicalAssetActualProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 120. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for physical asset actuals.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/PhysicalAssetActual	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated physical asset property or physical asset class property for a specific segment response.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of physical asset resources used in the parent segment, if applicable. The unit of measure of the quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 120: Attribute type PhysicalAssetActualProperty.

RoleClass “MaterialActual” shall be used as specified in Table 121. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of a “SegmentResponse” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “MaterialActual” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the material class, material definition, material lot, or material subplot that is involved in the given segment response. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

NOTE: Typically, either a material class, material definition, material lot, or material subplot is specified [IEC 62264-2].

Class Name	MaterialActual	
Description	Role class used for material actual classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/MaterialActual	
Attributes (optional)	materialUse (type="xs:string")	<p>Defines the actual use of the material. One of (nominal scaled constraint) "Consumable", "Consumed", "Produced", "Replaced Asset", "Replacement Asset", "Sample", "Returned Sample", "Carrier", "Returned Carrier".</p> <p>Defined values for production operations: Consumable, Consumed, Produced.</p> <p>Defined values for maintenance operations: Consumable, Replaced Asset, Replacement Asset.</p> <p>Defined values for quality operations: Consumable, Sample, Returned Sample.</p> <p>Defined values for inventory operations: Consumable, Carrier, Returned Carrier.</p>
	storageLocation (type="xs:string")	Identifies the actual location of the produced material, if applicable.
	quantity (type="xs:decimal")	Specifies the amount of material produced by the parent segment. Applies to each member of the material lot, material definition, or material class sets. The unit of measure of the quantity, is to be spec. as the "Unit" attribute, if applicable.
	assemblyType (type="xs:string")	<p>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled constraint) "Physical" or "Logical".</p> <p>Physical: components of the assembly are physically connected or in the same area.</p> <p>Logical: components of the assembly are not necessarily physically connected or in the same area.</p>
	assemblyRelationship (type="xs:string")	<p>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient".</p> <p>Permanent: an assembly that is not intended to be split during the production process.</p> <p>Transient: a temporary assembly used during production, such as a pallet of different materials or a batch kit.</p>

Table 121: Role class MaterialActual.

Properties for material actuals (“MaterialActualProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 122. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for material actuals.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsPerformanceModel/MaterialActual	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated material definition property or material class property for a specific segment response.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the amount of material produced by the parent segment. Applies to each member of the material lot, material definition, or material class sets. The unit of measure of the quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 122: Attribute type MaterialActualProperty.

5.3.10 Operations Capability

RoleClass “OperationsCapabilityModel” shall be used as specified in Table 123. It is the base structuring role class for all operations capability roles. In the context of IEC 62264, one of the concrete child roles (or any user defined sub role thereof) of OperationsCapabilityModel shall be used as a starting point for AML models.

Class Name	OperationsCapabilityModel
Description	Abstract role class used for structuring operations capability roles.
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsCapabilityModel
Attributes	None

Table 123: Role class OperationsCapabilityModel.

RoleClass “OperationsCapability” shall be used as specified in Table 124. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “OperationsCapability” as a supported role class or role requirement. Besides the entities specified below, also entities of type “ProcessSegmentCapability” might be added to an operations capability by means of a child internal element (be it explicitly modeled or a mirror object). The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	OperationsCapability	
Description	Role class used for operations capability classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Process	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsCapabilityModel/OperationsCapability	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Defines a unique instance of an operations capability for a specified element of the equipment hierarchy model (enterprise, site, area, work center, or work unit).
	capacityType (type=“xs:string”)	The capacity type. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Used”, “Unused”, “Total”, “Available”, “Unattainable”, or “Committed”.
	reason (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the reason for the capability type.
	confidenceFactor (type=“xs:string”)	A measure of the confidence of the capacity value.
	startTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The starting date and time of the operations capability.
	endTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The ending date and time of the operations capability.
	publishedDate (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The date and time on which the operations capability was published or generated.

Table 124: Role class OperationsCapability.

RoleClass “PersonnelCapability” shall be used as specified in Table 125. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsCapability” or a “ProcessSegmentCapability” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PersonnelCapability” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the personnel class or person that is involved in the given operations capability or process segment capability. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	PersonnelCapability	
Description	Role class used for personnel capability classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsCapabilityModel/PersonnelCapability	
Attributes (optional)	capabilityType (type=“xs:string”)	The capability type. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Used”, “Unused”, “Total”, “Available”, “Unattainable”, or “Committed”.
	reason (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the reason for the capability type.
	confidenceFactor (type=“xs:string”)	A measure of the confidence of the capacity value.
	personnelUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected capability use of the personnel class or person.
	startTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The starting time associated with the personnel capability.
	endTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The ending time associated with the personnel capability.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the quantity of the personnel capability defined, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 125: Role class PersonnelCapability.

Properties for personnel capabilities (“PersonnelCapabilityProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 126. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for personnel capabilities.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsCapabilityModel/ PersonnelCapability	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated person property or personnel class property.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the quantity of the personnel capability defined, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 126: Attribute type PersonnelCapabilityProperty.

RoleClass “EquipmentCapability” shall be used as specified in Table 127. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsCapability” or a “ProcessSegmentCapability” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “EquipmentCapability” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the equipment class or equipment that is involved in the given operations capability or process segment capability. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	EquipmentCapability	
Description	Role class used for equipment capability classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsCapabilityModel/EquipmentCapability	
Attributes (optional)	capabilityType (type=“xs:string”)	The capability type. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Used”, “Unused”, “Total”, “Available”, “Unattainable”, or “Committed”.
	reason (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the reason for the capability type.
	confidenceFactor (type=“xs:string”)	A measure of the confidence of the capacity value.
	equipmentUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected capability use of the equipment class or equipment.
	startTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The starting time associated with the equipment capability.
	endTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The ending time associated with the equipment capability.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the quantity of the equipment capability defined, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 127: Role class *EquipmentCapability*.

Properties for equipment capabilities (“EquipmentCapabilityProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 128. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for equipment capabilities.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsCapabilityModel/ EquipmentCapability	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated equipment property or equipment class property.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the quantity of the equipment capability defined, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 128: Attribute type EquipmentCapabilityProperty.

RoleClass “PhysicalAssetCapability” shall be used as specified in Table 129. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsCapability” or a “ProcessSegmentCapability” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “PhysicalAssetCapability” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the physical asset class or physical asset that is involved in the given operations capability or process segment capability. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	PhysicalAssetCapability	
Description	Role class used for physical asset capability classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsCapabilityModel/PhysicalAssetCapability	
Attributes (optional)	capabilityType (type=“xs:string”)	The capability type. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Used”, “Unused”, “Total”, “Available”, “Unattainable”, or “Committed”.
	reason (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the reason for the capability type.
	confidenceFactor (type=“xs:string”)	A measure of the confidence of the capacity value.
	physicalAssetUse (type=“xs:string”)	Defines the expected capability use of the physical asset class or physical asset.
	startTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The starting time associated with the physical asset capability.
	endTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The ending time associated with the physical asset capability.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the quantity of the physical asset capability defined, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 129: Role class PhysicalAssetCapability.

Properties for physical asset capabilities (“PhysicalAssetCapabilityProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 130. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for physical asset capabilities.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsCapabilityModel/ PhysicalAssetCapability	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated physical asset property or physical asset class property.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the quantity of the physical asset capability defined, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 130: Attribute type PhysicalAssetCapabilityProperty.

RoleClass “MaterialCapability” shall be used as specified in Table 131. Instances of this role class shall be realized as child internal elements of an “OperationsCapability” or a “ProcessSegmentCapability” internal element in an instance hierarchy, specifying “MaterialCapability” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the material class, material definition, material lot, or material subplot that is involved in the given operations capability or process segment capability. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

Class Name	MaterialCapability	
Description	Role class used for material capability classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsCapabilityModel/MaterialCapability	
Attributes (optional)	capabilityType (type="xs:string")	The capability type. One of (nominal scaled constraint) "Used", "Unused", "Total", "Available", "Unattainable", or "Committed".
	reason (type="xs:string")	Defines the reason for the capability type.
	confidenceFactor (type="xs:string")	A measure of the confidence of the capacity value.
	materialUse (type="xs:string")	Defines the expected capability use of the material.
	startTime (type="xs:dateTime")	The starting time associated with the material capability.
	endTime (type="xs:dateTime")	The ending time associated with the material capability.
	quantity (type="xs:decimal")	Specifies the quantity of the material capability defined, if applicable. The unit of measure of the material quantity, is to be specified as the "Unit" attribute, if applicable.
	assemblyType (type="xs:string")	Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: the components of the assembly are physically connected or in the same area. Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily physically connected or in the same area.
	assemblyRelationship (type="xs:string")	Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an assembly that is not intended to be split during the production process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production, such as a pallet of different materials or a batch kit.

Table 131: Role class *MaterialCapability*.

Properties for material capabilities (“MaterialCapabilityProperty”) shall be defined as complex attributes as specified in Table 132. The top-level attribute holds the description, the value and its unit of measure, if applicable. One sub-attribute holds the IEC 62264 ID of the property, while another one (“quantity”) holds the amount of resources required and its unit of measure, if applicable.

Description	Property specification for material capabilities.	
Host Class	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/OperationsCapabilityModel/MaterialCapability	
Attributes	id (type=“xs:string”)	Identification of the associated material property or equipment class property.
	quantity (type=“xs:decimal”)	Specifies the quantity of the material capability defined, if applicable. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

Table 132: Attribute type MaterialCapabilityProperty.

5.3.11 Process Segment Capability

RoleClass “ProcessSegmentCapability” shall be used as specified in Table 133. Instances of this role class shall be realized as internal elements in an instance hierarchy, specifying “ProcessSegmentCapability” as a supported role class or role requirement. Its purpose is the specification of the process segment that is involved in the given operations capability or process segment capability. This is realized by adding an instance of interface class “ResourceConnector” (cf. Clause 5.1) to this entity (in form of an external interface) as well as to the resource it is linked to. If a “ResourceConnector” is already existing, it can be reused.

The “description” property is to be instantiated as a “Description” header-attribute of the internal element.

The hierarchy scope of this element is defined by a relation to a “HierarchyScope” internal element. The relation is defined as follows: this element needs to define an external interface of type “HierarchyScopeConnector” that is linked via an internal link to another “HierarchyScopeConnector” external interface that is bound to a “HierarchyScope” internal element.

NOTE: Process segment capabilities should be used carefully because of possible double counts of resources [IEC 62264-2].

Class Name	ProcessSegmentCapability	
Description	Role class used for process segment capability classes.	
Parent Class	AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Process	
Path for Element Reference	AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentCapability	
Attributes (optional)	id (type=“xs:string”)	Defines a unique instance of a process segment capability for a specified element of the equipment hierarchy model (enterprise, site, area, work center, or work unit).
	capacityType (type=“xs:string”)	The capacity type. One of (nominal scaled constraint) “Available”, “Unattainable”, or “Committed”.
	reason (type=“xs:string”)	Gives the reason for the capacity type.
	startTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The starting time of the time span defining the capacity type.
	endTime (type=“xs:dateTime”)	The ending time of the time span defining the capacity type.

Table 133: Role class ProcessSegmentCapability.

6 Referencing B2MML Files

Regarding referencing B2MML files, the following provisions apply:

- An AML object that references a B2MML document shall hold a child internal element (resembling the document) that references role class “B2mmlData” as defined in Clause 5.2.
- A reference from this “document object” to a B2MML file shall be modelled by means of a CAEX external interface or interface class “ExternalDataReference” as described in Clause 4.1.2.
- The B2MML file shall be referenced by its URI within the attribute “refURI” of this external interface. If no fragment part is defined in the URI, then the root element is implicitly referenced.
- The B2MML file shall be referenced with a specific MIME type defined in the “MIMEtype” attribute of this external interface. The MIME type shall be “application/x.b2mml+xml”, in conformance with [RFC 6838].
- Referencing elements within a B2MML file shall be modeled by applying the global ID of the respective element to the fragment part of the URI, separated by a hash (#). It is to be noted that B2MML does not support the common XML notation of an “id” attribute, but instead uses an “ID” element of type “normalizedString” as a child of the element to be referenced.
- Referencing multiple B2MML files from a single AML object is allowed and shall be modeled by using multiple “document objects” as child internal elements.
- If a B2MML document is to be referenced from a role class entity, then a singleton instance of this role class shall be instantiated as an internal element, that in turn holds a “document object”, as described before. The unit of measure of the associated quantity, is to be specified as the “Unit” attribute, if applicable.

7 Relation to OPC Unified Architecture

OPC Unified Architecture (UA) is an industry standard brought forward by the OPC Foundation; it defines a modern, object- and service-oriented communication stack and modeling paradigm for industrial automation [IEC 62541-1]. Its versatility allows the mapping of various domain-specific models into OPC UA equivalent information models, such as AutomationML and IEC 62264 models.

The definitions in this recommendation are (through OPC UA) closely related to two other specifications: (i) the alignment of IEC 62264 with OPC UA [OPC-IEC62264] and (ii) the alignment of AutomationML with OPC UA [DIN 16592-12]. The relations are visualized in Figure 21 and resemble transformation rules for the conversion of information from one metamodel into information of another metamodel: (i) function f describes how to transform AutomationML models into the OPC UA space, (ii) function h describes the transformation from IEC 62264 to OPC UA, and (iii) function g provides a transformation from IEC 62264 to AutomationML. It would be beneficial for a number of stakeholders if the provision $f \circ g = h$ would hold, i.e., IEC 62264 models that are mapped directly into the OPC UA space via function h have an identical representation there as if they would be first be transformed into AutomationML (via g) and only then be mapped into the OPC UA space (via f).

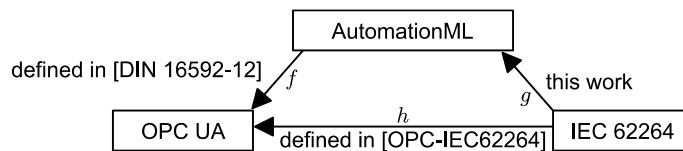


Figure 21: Composition of transformation/alignment functions: $f \circ g \neq h$.

The two already defined transformation specifications (“IEC 62264 to OPC UA” [OPC-IEC62264] and “AutomationML to OPC UA” [DIN 16592-12]) each define a basic OPC UA information model that provides the base structures for domain specific information models (depicted in Figure 22 and Figure 23). Therefore, an internal element that implements the role class “PhysicalAsset”, as defined in this specification, would be instantiated as an OPC UA object with a type definition pointing to a subtype of the OPC UA object type “CAEXObjectType”. A physical asset instance of IEC 62264 would be instantiated as an OPC UA object with a type definition pointing to the OPC UA object type “PhysicalAssetType”.

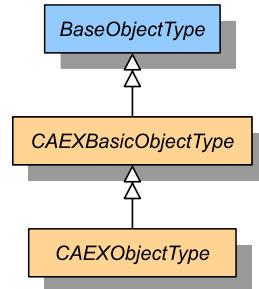


Figure 22: Excerpt of the basic information model for AutomationML-based models (cf. [DIN 16592-12]).

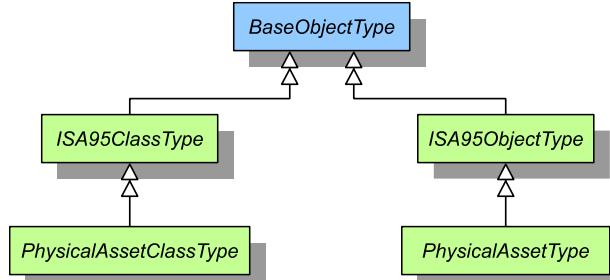


Figure 23: Excerpt of the basic information model for IEC 62264-based models (cf. [OPC-IEC62264]).

Since an OPC UA object is allowed only one type definition, it is not possible to provide a fully compatible mapping from IEC 62264 to AutomationML. However, it is possible (and has been realized in this

recommendation) to map IEC 62264 elements to AutomationML elements in a way that the corresponding metamodel elements of OPC UA conform to each other. This has been achieved for all main concepts, except for resource test results (e.g., `QualificationTestResult` and `EquipmentCapabilityTestResult`): in [OPC-IEC62264], these entities are instances of OPC UA variable types (and thus correspond to attributes), while in this specification they are instances of type internal element and not realized as attributes. This decision has been taken in order to keep referential integrity within the AML document while relying on standard AML referencing schemes.

In a setting where both the IEC 62264 model and the AutomationML model are injected into an OPC UA server, these two model co-exist in parallel. To clarify and make explicit that two distinct OPC UA nodes describe an identical asset [DIN 16592-12] provides the reference type “`HasAMLUAResource`”. References of this reference type point from an AutomationML node to a corresponding IEC 62264 node (cf. Figure 24). Currently, this is realized by following the external data reference, as specified in Clause 6, i.e., it is only supported in an environment where an external B2MML file is referenced.

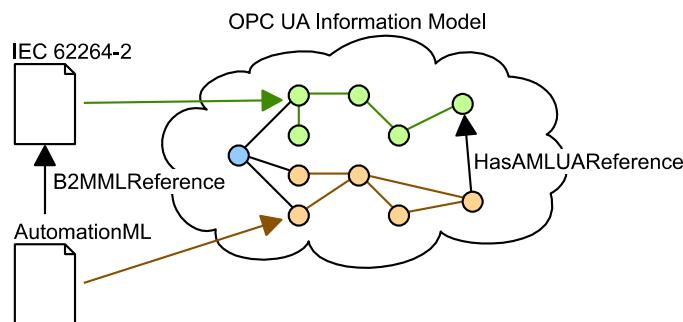


Figure 24: Referencing corresponding elements from IEC 62264 and AutomationML in OPC UA.

In order to overcome this issue and provide a semantically similar solution to AutomationML, models that have been modeled without references to B2MML documents, the following approach is provided: internal elements and system unit classes that have been modeled with the definitions provided in this recommendation can be matched with IEC 62264 elements via their “ID” attribute. After transforming the IEC 62264 aware AutomationML model into an OPC UA information model, a second processing step could search the IEC 62264 based OPC UA space (if there is one) for elements whose ID matches that of an AutomationML based element. In that case, a reference of type “`HasAMLIEC62264UAResource`” shall be created, pointing from the AutomationML element to the IEC 62264 element.

Reference type “`HasAMLIEC62264UAResource`” is defined as a subtype of “`HasAMLUAResource`” and represented in the OPC UA address space as specified in Table 134.

Attributes	Value		
BrowseName	HasAMLIEC62264UAResource		
InverseName	IsAMLIEC62264ReferenceOf		
Symmetric	False		
IsAbstract	False		
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Comment
Subtype of <code>HasAMLUAResource</code> ReferenceType, defined in [DIN 16592-12].			

Table 134: `HasAMLIEC62264UAResource` ReferenceType.

The `SourceNode` of this ReferenceType is an OPC UA Node of type Object, ObjectType, or Variable which is part of a transformed AML model and that represents an element of IEC 62264.

The `TargetNode` of this ReferenceType is an OPC UA Node of any type that represents a corresponding element of IEC 62264, such as one created by applying the transformation rules defined in [OPC-IEC62264].

8 Notes regarding the Examples in the Appendices

For the sake of better comprehendability, in the code listings in Appendix D and Appendix E, the UIDs of AML elements have been replaced by human readable or otherwise shortened strings (e.g., the value of a corresponding “name” attribute, if applicable). Furthermore, in all appendices some often-used CAEX path definitions are substituted by shorter strings, as depicted in Table 135.

Original	Substitution
AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface/PPRConnector	PPRConnector
AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole	BR
AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Process	Process
AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Product	Product
AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Resource	Resource
AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Structure/ProcessStructure	ProcessStructure
AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Structure/ProductStructure	ProductStructure
AutomationMLBaseRoleClassLib/AutomationMLBaseRole/Structure/ResourceStructure	ResourceStructure
AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Site	Site
AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/Area	Area
AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/ProductionLine	ProductionLine
AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/WorkCell	WorkCell
AutomationMLBPRInterfaceClassLib/ExternalDataReference	EDR
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/EquipmentClass	EquipmentClass
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/Equipment	Equipment
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAssetClass	PhysicalAssetClass
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAsset	PhysicalAsset
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialClass	MaterialClass
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialDefinition	MaterialDefinition
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/ProcessSegmentDependency	ProcessSegmentDependency
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/ProcessSegment	ProcessSegment
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/EquipmentSegmentSpecification	EquipmentSegmentSpecification
AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/ProcessSegmentModel/MaterialSegmentSpecification	MaterialSegmentSpecification
AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib/ResourceConnector	RC
AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib/EquipmentAssetConnector	EAC
AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib/DependencyConnector	DC
AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData	B2mmlData

Table 135: Substitutions in use in Listings 2, 4, 6, 8, and 13.

References

- [IEC 62264-1] IEC, Enterprise-control system integration – Part 1: Models and terminology, International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), Standard, Rev. ISO/IEC 62264-1:2013, May 2013.
- [IEC 62264-2] IEC, Enterprise-control system integration – Part 2: Objects and attributes for enterprise-control system integration, International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), Standard, Rev. ISO/IEC 62264-2:2013, June 2013.
- [IEC 62714-1] IEC, Engineering data exchange format for use in industrial automation systems engineering – Automation markup language – Part 1: Architecture and general requirements, International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), Standard, Rev. ISO/IEC 62714-1:2014, June 2014.
- [IEC 62714-2] IEC, Engineering data exchange format for use in industrial automation systems engineering – Automation markup language – Part 2: Role class libraries, International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), Standard, Rev. ISO/IEC 62714-2:2015, March 2015.
- [AML-B-EDR] AutomationML Consortium, AutomationML Best Practice Recommendation – External Data Reference, July 2016.
- [RFC 6838] N. Freed, J. Klensin, and T. Hansen, Media Type Specifications and Registration Procedures, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Best Current Practice, January 2013.
- [IEC 62541-1] IEC, OPC Unified Architecture – Part 1: Overview and Concepts, International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), Standard, Rev. IEC 62541-1:2010, February 2010.
- [DIN 16592-12] DIN, Combining OPC Unified Architecture and Automation Markup Language, DIN Standard, DIN 16592:2016-12, December 2016.
- [OPC-IEC62264] OPC Foundation, OPC Unified Architecture for ISA-95 Common Object Model, Companion Specification, Rev. 1.00, October 2013.

Appendix A AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib

Listing 1 depicts the complete source code of the AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib. Conceptually, the AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib works in conjunction with the AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib.

Listing 1: AutomationML IEC 62264 interface class library.

```
1 <InterfaceClassLib Name="AutomationMLIEC62264InterfaceClassLib">
2   <Description>IEC 62264 Interface Class Library</Description>
3   <Version>1.0.0</Version>
4   <InterfaceClass Name="HierarchyScopeConnector"
5     RefBaseClassPath="AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface">
6     <Description>
7       HierarchyScopeConnector shall be used in order to reference hierarchy scope
8       elements from other entities such as e.g., process segments.
9     </Description>
10    </InterfaceClass>
11    <InterfaceClass Name="ResourceConnector"
12      RefBaseClassPath="AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface">
13      <Description>
14        ResourceConnector shall be used in order to reference basic or complex
15        resources from complex entities such as, e.g., a person or personnel
16        class from a personnel segment requirement of a process segment.
17      </Description>
18    </InterfaceClass>
19    <InterfaceClass Name="EquipmentAssetConnector"
20      RefBaseClassPath="AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface">
21      <Description>
22        EquipmentAssetConnector shall be used in order to link equipment and
23        physical assets to equipment asset mappings.
24      </Description>
25    </InterfaceClass>
26    <InterfaceClass Name="DependencyConnector"
27      RefBaseClassPath="AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface">
28      <Description>
29        DependencyConnector shall be used in order to link process and operations
30        segments to process and operations segment dependencies, respectively.
31      </Description>
32    </InterfaceClass>
33    <InterfaceClass Name="TestConnector"
34      RefBaseClassPath="AutomationMLInterfaceClassLib/AutomationMLBaseInterface">
35      <Description>
36        TestConnector shall be used in order to link resources and resource types to
37        test specifications and test results.
38      </Description>
39    </InterfaceClass>
40  </InterfaceClassLib>
```

Appendix B AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib

Listing 2 depicts the complete source code of the AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib. Conceptually, the AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib can be used without using references to external B2MML documents and thus it is independent of, but interoperable with, the AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib.

Listing 2: AutomationML IEC 62264 role class library.

```

1  <RoleClassLib Name="AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib">
2      <Description>IEC 62264 Role Class Library</Description>
3      <Version>1.1.0</Version>
4      <RoleClass Name="HierarchyScope" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
5          <Attribute Name="equipmentElementLevel" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
6              <Description>
7                  Identification of the equipment level if the equipment element is
8                  defined.
9              </Description>
10             </Attribute>
11         </RoleClass>
12         <RoleClass Name="PersonnelModel" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
13             <Description>
14                 Abstract role class used for structuring personnel roles.
15             </Description>
16             <RoleClass Name="PersonnelClass" RefBaseClassPath="Resource">
17                 <Description>Role class used for personnel classes.</Description>
18                 <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
19                     <Description>
20                         Unique identification of a specific personnel class. These are not
21                         necessarily job titles, but identify classes that are
22                         referenced in other parts of the model.
23                     </Description>
24                 </Attribute>
25             </RoleClass>
26             <RoleClass Name="Person" RefBaseClassPath="Resource">
27                 <Description>Role class used for persons.</Description>
28                 <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
29                     <Description>
30                         A unique identification of a specific person, within the scope of
31                         the information exchanged (e.g. production capability,
32                         production schedule, and production performance).
33                     </Description>
34                 </Attribute>
35                 <Attribute Name="name" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
36                     <Description>The name of the individual.</Description>
37                 </Attribute>
38             </RoleClass>
39             <RoleClass Name="QualificationTestSpecification" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
40                 <Description>
41                     Role class used for qualification test specifications.
42                 </Description>
43                 <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
44                     <Description>
45                         An identification of a test for certifying one or more values for
46                         one or more person properties.
47                     </Description>
48                 </Attribute>
49                 <Attribute Name="version" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
50                     <Description>
51                         An identification of the version of the qualification test
52                         specification.
53                     </Description>
54                 </Attribute>
55             </RoleClass>
56             <RoleClass Name="QualificationTestResult" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
57                 <Description>Role class used for qualification test results.</Description>

```

```
58      </RoleClass>
59  </RoleClass>
60  <RoleClass Name="EquipmentModel" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
61      <Description>
62          Abstract role class used for structuring equipment roles.
63      </Description>
64  <RoleClass Name="EquipmentClass" RefBaseClassPath="Resource">
65      <Description>Role class used for equipment classes.</Description>
66      <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
67          <Description>
68              A unique identification of a specific equipment class, within the
69              scope of the information exchanged (e.g. production
70              capability, production schedule, production performance).
71          </Description>
72      </Attribute>
73  <Attribute Name="equipmentLevel" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
74      <Description>An identification of the level in the role based equipment
75          hierarchy. One of (nominal scaled constraint): "Enterprise",
76          "Site", "Area", "Work Center", "Process Cell", "Production Unit",
77          "Production Line", "Storage Zone", "Work Unit", "Unit", "Work
78          Cell", "Storage Unit".</Description>
79  <Constraint Name="equipmentLevel">
80      <NominalScaledType>
81          <RequiredValue>Enterprise</RequiredValue>
82          <RequiredValue>Site</RequiredValue>
83          <RequiredValue>Area</RequiredValue>
84          <RequiredValue>Work Center</RequiredValue>
85          <RequiredValue>Process Cell</RequiredValue>
86          <RequiredValue>Production Unit</RequiredValue>
87          <RequiredValue>Production Line</RequiredValue>
88          <RequiredValue>Storage Zone</RequiredValue>
89          <RequiredValue>Work Unit</RequiredValue>
90          <RequiredValue>Unit</RequiredValue>
91          <RequiredValue>Work Cell</RequiredValue>
92          <RequiredValue>Storage Unit</RequiredValue>
93      </NominalScaledType>
94  </Constraint>
95  </Attribute>
96 </RoleClass>
97  <RoleClass Name="Equipment" RefBaseClassPath="Resource">
98      <Description>Role class used for equipment.</Description>
99      <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
100         <Description>
101             A unique identification of a specific piece of equipment, within the
102             scope of the information exchanged (manufacturing operations
103             definition, scheduling, capability and performance).
104         </Description>
105     </Attribute>
106  <Attribute Name="equipmentLevel" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
107      <Description>An identification of the level in the role based equipment
108          hierarchy. One of (nominal scaled constraint): "Enterprise",
109          "Site", "Area", "Work Center", "Process Cell", "Production Unit",
110          "Production Line", "Storage Zone", "Work Unit", "Unit", "Work
111          Cell", "Storage Unit".</Description>
112  <Constraint Name="equipmentLevel">
113      <NominalScaledType>
114          <RequiredValue>Enterprise</RequiredValue>
115          <RequiredValue>Site</RequiredValue>
116          <RequiredValue>Area</RequiredValue>
117          <RequiredValue>Work Center</RequiredValue>
118          <RequiredValue>Process Cell</RequiredValue>
119          <RequiredValue>Production Unit</RequiredValue>
120          <RequiredValue>Production Line</RequiredValue>
121          <RequiredValue>Storage Zone</RequiredValue>
122          <RequiredValue>Work Unit</RequiredValue>
123          <RequiredValue>Unit</RequiredValue>
```

```
124          <RequiredValue>Work Cell</RequiredValue>
125          <RequiredValue>Storage Unit</RequiredValue>
126      </NominalScaledType>
127    </Constraint>
128  </Attribute>
129</RoleClass>
130<RoleClass Name="EquipmentCapabilityTestSpecification" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
131  <Description>
132    Role class used for equipment capability test specifications.
133  </Description>
134  <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
135    <Description>
136      An identification of a test for certifying one or more values for
137      one or more equipment properties.
138    </Description>
139  </Attribute>
140  <Attribute Name="version" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
141    <Description>
142      An identification of the version of the capability test
143      specification.
144    </Description>
145  </Attribute>
146</RoleClass>
147<RoleClass Name="EquipmentCapabilityTestResult" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
148  <Description>
149    Role class used for equipment capability test results.
150  </Description>
151</RoleClass>
152</RoleClass>
153<RoleClass Name="PhysicalAssetModel" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
154  <Description>
155    Abstract role class for structuring physical asset roles.
156  </Description>
157<RoleClass Name="PhysicalAssetClass" RefBaseClassPath="Resource">
158  <Description>Role class used for physical asset classes.</Description>
159  <Attribute Name="manufacturer" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
160    <Description>An identification of the manufacturer.</Description>
161  </Attribute>
162  <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
163    <Description>The manufacturer's identification of the specific physical
164    asset class.</Description>
165  </Attribute>
166</RoleClass>
167<RoleClass Name="PhysicalAsset" RefBaseClassPath="Resource">
168  <Description>Role class used for physical assets.</Description>
169  <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
170    <Description>
171      Defines a unique identification of a physical asset.
172    </Description>
173  </Attribute>
174  <Attribute Name="physicalLocation" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
175    <Description>
176      Actual physical location of the physical asset.
177    </Description>
178  </Attribute>
179  <Attribute Name="fixedAssetId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
180    <Description>
181      Contains a unique identification for financial tracking as required
182      by laws or regulations.
183    </Description>
184  </Attribute>
185  <Attribute Name="vendorId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
186    <Description>Contains a vendor's serial number.</Description>
187  </Attribute>
188</RoleClass>
189<RoleClass Name="PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestSpecification">
```

```
190      RefBaseClassPath="BR">
191      <Description>
192          Role class used for physical asset capability test specifications.
193      </Description>
194      <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
195          <Description>
196              An identification of the specific physical asset capability test
197              specification.
198          </Description>
199      </Attribute>
200      <Attribute Name="version" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
201          <Description>
202              An identification of the version of the capability test
203              specification.
204          </Description>
205      </Attribute>
206  </RoleClass>
207  <RoleClass Name="PhysicalAssetCapabilityTestResult" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
208      <Description>
209          Role class used for physical asset capability test results.
210      </Description>
211  </RoleClass>
212  <RoleClass Name="EquipmentAssetMapping" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
213      <Description>
214          EquipmentAssetMapping shall be used to link physical assets to
215          equipment.
216      </Description>
217      <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
218          <Description>
219              An identification of the specific equipment asset mapping.
220          </Description>
221      </Attribute>
222      <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
223          <Description>The starting time of the association.</Description>
224      </Attribute>
225      <Attribute Name="endTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
226          <Description>The ending time of the association.</Description>
227      </Attribute>
228  </RoleClass>
229  </RoleClass>
230  <RoleClass Name="MaterialModel" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
231      <Description>
232          Abstract role class for structuring material roles.
233      </Description>
234  <RoleClass Name="MaterialClass" RefBaseClassPath="Product">
235      <Description>Role class used for material classes.</Description>
236      <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
237          <Description>
238              A unique identification of a specific material class, within the
239              scope of the information exchanged (e.g. production
240              capability, production schedule, production performance)
241          </Description>
242      </Attribute>
243      <Attribute Name="assemblyType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
244          <Description>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled
245              constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: the components of
246              the assembly are physically connected or in the same area.
247              Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily
248              physically connected or in the same area.</Description>
249      <Constraint Name="assemblyType">
250          <NominalScaledType>
251              <RequiredValue>Physical</RequiredValue>
252              <RequiredValue>Logical</RequiredValue>
253          </NominalScaledType>
254      </Constraint>
255  </Attribute>
```

```
256 <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
257   <Description>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal
258     scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an
259     assembly that is not intended to be split during the production
260     process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production,
261     such as a pallet of different materials or a batch
262     kit.</Description>
263   <Constraint Name="assemblyRelationship">
264     <NominalScaledType>
265       <RequiredValue>Permanent</RequiredValue>
266       <RequiredValue>Transient</RequiredValue>
267     </NominalScaledType>
268   </Constraint>
269 </RoleClass>
270 <RoleClass Name="MaterialDefinition" RefBaseClassPath="Product">
271   <Description>Role class used for material definitions.</Description>
272   <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
273     <Description>
274       A unique identification of a specific material definition, within
275       the scope of the information exchanged (e.g. operations
276       capability, operations schedule, operations performance).
277     </Description>
278   </Attribute>
279   <Attribute Name="assemblyType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
280     <Description>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled
281       constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: the components of
282       the assembly are physically connected or in the same area.
283       Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily
284       physically connected or in the same area.</Description>
285     <Constraint Name="assemblyType">
286       <NominalScaledType>
287         <RequiredValue>Physical</RequiredValue>
288         <RequiredValue>Logical</RequiredValue>
289       </NominalScaledType>
290     </Constraint>
291   </Attribute>
292   <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
293     <Description>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal
294       scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an
295     assembly that is not intended to be split during the production
296     process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production,
297     such as a pallet of different materials or a batch
298     kit.</Description>
299   <Constraint Name="assemblyRelationship">
300     <NominalScaledType>
301       <RequiredValue>Permanent</RequiredValue>
302       <RequiredValue>Transient</RequiredValue>
303     </NominalScaledType>
304   </Constraint>
305   </Attribute>
306 </RoleClass>
307 <RoleClass Name="MaterialLot" RefBaseClassPath="Product">
308   <Description>Role class used for material lots.</Description>
309   <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
310     <Description>
311       A unique identification of a specific material lot, within the scope
312       of the information exchanged (e.g. operations capability,
313       operations schedule, operations performance).
314     </Description>
315   </Attribute>
316   <Attribute Name="assemblyType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
317     <Description>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled
318       constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: the components of
319       the assembly are physically connected or in the same area.
320       Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily
```

```
322     physically connected or in the same area.</Description>
323     <Constraint Name="assemblyType">
324         <NominalScaledType>
325             <RequiredValue>Physical</RequiredValue>
326             <RequiredValue>Logical</RequiredValue>
327         </NominalScaledType>
328     </Constraint>
329 </Attribute>
330 <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
331     <Description>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal
332         scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an
333         assembly that is not intended to be split during the production
334         process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production,
335         such as a pallet of different materials or a batch
336         kit.</Description>
337     <Constraint Name="assemblyRelationship">
338         <NominalScaledType>
339             <RequiredValue>Permanent</RequiredValue>
340             <RequiredValue>Transient</RequiredValue>
341         </NominalScaledType>
342     </Constraint>
343 </Attribute>
344 <Attribute Name="status" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
345     <Description>Status of the material lot, e.g. "released", "approved",
346         "blocked", "in process", "in quality check".</Description>
347 </Attribute>
348 <Attribute Name="storageLocation" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
349     <Description>
350         An identification of the storage location or a physical location of
351         the material lot.
352     </Description>
353 </Attribute>
354 <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
355     <Description>The quantity of the material lot.</Description>
356 </Attribute>
357 </RoleClass>
358 <RoleClass Name="MaterialSublot" RefBaseClassPath="Product">
359     <Description>Role class used for material sublots.</Description>
360     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
361         <Description>
362             A unique identification of a specific material subplot, within the
363             scope of the information exchanged (e.g. production
364             capability, production schedule, production performance).
365         </Description>
366     </Attribute>
367     <Attribute Name="assemblyType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
368         <Description>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled
369             constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: the components of
370             the assembly are physically connected or in the same area.
371             Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily
372             physically connected or in the same area.</Description>
373         <Constraint Name="assemblyType">
374             <NominalScaledType>
375                 <RequiredValue>Physical</RequiredValue>
376                 <RequiredValue>Logical</RequiredValue>
377             </NominalScaledType>
378         </Constraint>
379     </Attribute>
380     <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
381         <Description>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal
382             scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an
383             assembly that is not intended to be split during the production
384             process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production,
385             such as a pallet of different materials or a batch
386             kit.</Description>
387         <Constraint Name="assemblyRelationship">
```

```
388         <NominalScaledType>
389             <RequiredValue>Permanent</RequiredValue>
390             <RequiredValue>Transient</RequiredValue>
391         </NominalScaledType>
392     </Constraint>
393 </Attribute>
394 <Attribute Name="status" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
395     <Description>Status of the material subplot, e.g. "released",
396     "approved", "blocked", "in process", "in quality
397     check".</Description>
398 </Attribute>
399 <Attribute Name="storageLocation" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
400     <Description>
401         An identification of the storage location or a physical location of
402         the material subplot.
403     </Description>
404 </Attribute>
405 <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
406     <Description>The quantity of the material subplot.</Description>
407 </Attribute>
408 </RoleClass>
409 <RoleClass Name="MaterialTestSpecification" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
410     <Description>
411         Role class used for material test specifications.
412     </Description>
413     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
414         <Description>
415             An identification of a test for certifying one or more values for
416             one or more material properties.
417         </Description>
418     </Attribute>
419     <Attribute Name="version" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
420         <Description>
421             An identification of the version of the maerial test specification.
422         </Description>
423     </Attribute>
424 </RoleClass>
425 <RoleClass Name="MaterialTestResult" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
426     <Description>Role class used for material test results.</Description>
427 </RoleClass>
428 <RoleClass Name="MaterialAssembly" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
429     <Description>
430         Role class used for specifying material assemblies.
431     </Description>
432 </RoleClass>
433 </RoleClass>
434 <RoleClass Name="ProcessSegmentModel" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
435     <Description>
436         Abstract role class for structuring process segment roles.
437     </Description>
438     <RoleClass Name="ProcessSegment" RefBaseClassPath="Process">
439         <Description>Role class used for process segments.</Description>
440         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
441             <Description>
442                 A unique identification of a process segment, within the scope of
443                 the information exchanged (e.g. operations capability,
444                 operations schedule, operations performance).
445             </Description>
446         </Attribute>
447         <Attribute Name="operationsType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
448             <Description>Describes the category of the activity. One of (nominal
449             scaled constraint) "Production", "Maintenance", "Quality",
450             "Inventory", or "Mixed". "Mixed" shall be used when the activity
451             contains several categories of process segments.</Description>
452         <Constraint Name="operationsType">
453             <NominalScaledType>
```

```
454      <RequiredValue>Production</RequiredValue>
455      <RequiredValue>Maintenance</RequiredValue>
456      <RequiredValue>Quality</RequiredValue>
457      <RequiredValue>Inventory</RequiredValue>
458      <RequiredValue>Mixed</RequiredValue>
459          </NominalScaledType>
460      </Constraint>
461  </Attribute>
462  <Attribute Name="duration" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
463      <Description>Duration of process segment, if known.</Description>
464  </Attribute>
465 </RoleClass>
466 <RoleClass Name="PersonnelSegmentSpecification" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
467  <Description>
468      Role class used for personnel segment specifications.
469  </Description>
470  <Attribute Name="personnelUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
471      <Description>Defines the expected use of the personnel class or person,
472          e.g. "Allocated" or "Certified".</Description>
473  </Attribute>
474  <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
475      <Description>
476          Specifies the personnel resource required for the parent process
477          segment, if applicable.
478      </Description>
479  </Attribute>
480 </RoleClass>
481 <RoleClass Name="EquipmentSegmentSpecification" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
482  <Description>
483      Role class used for equipment segment specifications.
484  </Description>
485  <Attribute Name="equipmentUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
486      <Description>Defines the expected use of the equipment class or
487          equipment in the context of the process segment, e.g. "Part
488          Milling", "Remove Motor", "Run Test", and "Material
489          Movement".</Description>
490  </Attribute>
491  <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
492      <Description>
493          Specifies the amount of resources required, if applicable.
494      </Description>
495  </Attribute>
496 </RoleClass>
497 <RoleClass Name="PhysicalAssetSegmentSpecification" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
498  <Description>
499      Role class used for physical asset segment specifications.
500  </Description>
501  <Attribute Name="physicalAssetUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
502      <Description>
503          Defines the expected use of the physical asset class or physical
504          asset in the context of the process segment.
505      </Description>
506  </Attribute>
507  <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
508      <Description>
509          Specifies the amount of resources required, if applicable.
510      </Description>
511  </Attribute>
512 </RoleClass>
513 <RoleClass Name="MaterialSegmentSpecification" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
514  <Description>
515      Role class used for material segment specifications.
516  </Description>
517  <Attribute Name="assemblyType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
518      <Description>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled
519          constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: the components of
```

```
520             the assembly are physically connected or in the same area.  
521             Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily  
522             physically connected or in the same area.</Description>  
523             <Constraint Name="assemblyType">  
524                 <NominalScaledType>  
525                     <RequiredValue>Physical</RequiredValue>  
526                     <RequiredValue>Logical</RequiredValue>  
527                 </NominalScaledType>  
528             </Constraint>  
529         </Attribute>  
530         <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" AttributeDataType="xs:string">  
531             <Description>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal  
532             scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an  
533             assembly that is not intended to be split during the production  
534             process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production,  
535             such as a pallet of different materials or a batch  
536             kit.</Description>  
537             <Constraint Name="assemblyRelationship">  
538                 <NominalScaledType>  
539                     <RequiredValue>Permanent</RequiredValue>  
540                     <RequiredValue>Transient</RequiredValue>  
541                 </NominalScaledType>  
542             </Constraint>  
543         </Attribute>  
544         <Attribute Name="materialUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">  
545             <Description>Defines the material use. One of (nominal scaled  
546             constraint): "Consumable", "Material Consumed", and "Material  
547             Produced".</Description>  
548             <Constraint Name="materialUse">  
549                 <NominalScaledType>  
550                     <RequiredValue>Consumable</RequiredValue>  
551                     <RequiredValue>Material Consumed</RequiredValue>  
552                     <RequiredValue>Material Produced</RequiredValue>  
553                 </NominalScaledType>  
554             </Constraint>  
555         </Attribute>  
556         <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">  
557             <Description>Specifies the amount of resources required.</Description>  
558         </Attribute>  
559     </RoleClass>  
560     <RoleClass Name="ProcessSegmentDependency" RefBaseClassPath="BR">  
561         <Description>  
562             Role class used for process segment dependencies.  
563         </Description>  
564         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">  
565             <Description>  
566                 The identification of the unique instance of the process segment  
567                 dependency.  
568             </Description>  
569         </Attribute>  
570         <Attribute Name="dependencyType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">  
571             <Description>  
572                 Defines the execution dependency constraints of one segment by  
573                 another segment.  
574             </Description>  
575         </Attribute>  
576         <Attribute Name="dependencyFactor" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">  
577             <Description>Factor used by dependency.</Description>  
578         </Attribute>  
579     </RoleClass>  
580 </RoleClass>  
581     <RoleClass Name="OperationsDefinitionModel" RefBaseClassPath="BR">  
582         <Description>  
583             Abstract role class used for structuring operations definition roles.  
584         </Description>  
585     <RoleClass Name="OperationsDefinition" RefBaseClassPath="ProcessStructure">
```

```
586     <Description>Role class used for operations definitions.</Description>
587     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
588         <Description>
589             Uniquely identifies the operations definition.
590         </Description>
591     </Attribute>
592     <Attribute Name="version" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
593         <Description>
594             An identification of the version of the operations definition.
595         </Description>
596     </Attribute>
597     <Attribute Name="operationsType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
598         <Description>Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal
599             scaled constraint) "Production", "Maintenance", "Quality",
600             "Inventory", or "Mixed". "Mixed" shall be used when the
601             operations definition contains several types of operations
602             requests and/or segment requirements.</Description>
603     <Constraint Name="operationsType">
604         <NominalScaledType>
605             <RequiredValue>Production</RequiredValue>
606             <RequiredValue>Maintenance</RequiredValue>
607             <RequiredValue>Quality</RequiredValue>
608             <RequiredValue>Inventory</RequiredValue>
609             <RequiredValue>Mixed</RequiredValue>
610         </NominalScaledType>
611     </Constraint>
612   </Attribute>
613   <Attribute Name="workDefinitionId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
614       <Description>
615           Identification of the external work definition associated with this
616           operations definition.
617       </Description>
618   </Attribute>
619   <Attribute Name="billOfResourceId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
620       <Description>
621           Identification of the external bill of resources associated with
622           this operations definition.
623       </Description>
624   </Attribute>
625 </RoleClass>
626 <RoleClass Name="OperationsMaterialBill" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
627     <Description>Role class used for operations material bills.</Description>
628     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
629         <Description>
630             Unique identification of a manufacturing bill.
631         </Description>
632     </Attribute>
633 </RoleClass>
634 <RoleClass Name="OperationsMaterialBillItem" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
635     <Description>
636         Role class used for operations material bill items.
637     </Description>
638     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
639         <Description>Unique identification of a bill item.</Description>
640     </Attribute>
641     <Attribute Name="useType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
642         <Description>Defines the use of the material. One of (nominal scaled
643             constraint): "Consumed" or "Produced". Consumed: Indicates that
644             bill items are all consumed materials. Produced: Indicates that
645             bill items are all produced materials.</Description>
646     <Constraint Name="useType">
647         <NominalScaledType>
648             <RequiredValue>Consumed</RequiredValue>
649             <RequiredValue>Produced</RequiredValue>
650         </NominalScaledType>
651     </Constraint>
```

```
652 </Attribute>
653 <Attribute Name="assemblyType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
654     <Description>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled
655         constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: the components of
656         the assembly are physically connected or in the same area.
657         Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily
658         physically connected or in the same area.</Description>
659     <Constraint Name="assemblyType">
660         <NominalScaledType>
661             <RequiredValue>Physical</RequiredValue>
662             <RequiredValue>Logical</RequiredValue>
663         </NominalScaledType>
664     </Constraint>
665 </Attribute>
666 <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
667     <Description>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal
668         scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an
669         assembly that is not intended to be split during the production
670         process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production,
671         such as a pallet of different materials or a batch
672         kit.</Description>
673     <Constraint Name="assemblyRelationship">
674         <NominalScaledType>
675             <RequiredValue>Permanent</RequiredValue>
676             <RequiredValue>Transient</RequiredValue>
677         </NominalScaledType>
678     </Constraint>
679 </Attribute>
680 <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
681     <Description>Specifies the amount of resources required.</Description>
682 </Attribute>
683 </RoleClass>
684 <RoleClass Name="OperationsSegment" RefBaseClass Path="Process">
685     <Description>Role class used for operations segments.</Description>
686     <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
687         <Description>Unique identification of a specific segment.</Description>
688     </Attribute>
689     <Attribute Name="descriptions" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
690         <Description>
691             Contains additional information about the segment.
692         </Description>
693     </Attribute>
694     <Attribute Name="duration" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
695         <Description>Duration of segment, if known.</Description>
696     </Attribute>
697     <Attribute Name="operationsType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
698         <Description>Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal
699             scaled constraint) "Production", "Maintenance", "Quality",
700             "Inventory", or "Mixed". "Mixed" shall be used when the
701             operations segment contains several types of operations requests
702             and/or segment requirements.</Description>
703     <Constraint Name="operationsType">
704         <NominalScaledType>
705             <RequiredValue>Production</RequiredValue>
706             <RequiredValue>Maintenance</RequiredValue>
707             <RequiredValue>Quality</RequiredValue>
708             <RequiredValue>Inventory</RequiredValue>
709             <RequiredValue>Mixed</RequiredValue>
710         </NominalScaledType>
711     </Constraint>
712 </Attribute>
713 <Attribute Name="workDefinitionId" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
714     <Description>
715         Identification of the external work definition associated with this
716         operations segment.
717     </Description>
```

```
718      </Attribute>
719  </RoleClass>
720  <RoleClass Name="PersonnelSpecification" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
721      <Description>Role class used for personnel specifications.</Description>
722      <Attribute Name="personnelUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
723          <Description>
724              Defines the expected use of the personnel class or person.
725          </Description>
726      </Attribute>
727      <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
728          <Description>
729              Specifies the amount of personnel resources required for the parent
730              segment, if applicable.
731          </Description>
732      </Attribute>
733  </RoleClass>
734  <RoleClass Name="EquipmentSpecification" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
735      <Description>Role class used for equipment specifications.</Description>
736      <Attribute Name="equipmentUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
737          <Description>
738              Defines the expected use of the equipment class or equipment.
739          </Description>
740      </Attribute>
741      <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
742          <Description>
743              Specifies the amount of equipment resources required for the parent
744              segment, if applicable.
745          </Description>
746      </Attribute>
747  </RoleClass>
748  <RoleClass Name="PhysicalAssetSpecification" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
749      <Description>
750          Role class used for physical asset specifications.
751      </Description>
752      <Attribute Name="physicalAssetUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
753          <Description>
754              Defines the expected use of the physical asset class or physical
755              asset.
756          </Description>
757      </Attribute>
758      <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
759          <Description>
760              Specifies the amount of physical asset resources required for the
761              parent segment, if applicable.
762          </Description>
763      </Attribute>
764  </RoleClass>
765  <RoleClass Name="MaterialSpecification" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
766      <Description>Role class used for material specifications.</Description>
767      <Attribute Name="materialUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
768          <Description>Defines the expected material use. One of (nominal scaled
769          constraint) "Material Consumed", "Material Produced", or
770          "Consumable".</Description>
771          <Constraint Name="materialUse">
772              <NominalScaledType>
773                  <RequiredValue>Material Consumed</RequiredValue>
774                  <RequiredValue>Material Produced</RequiredValue>
775                  <RequiredValue>Consumable</RequiredValue>
776              </NominalScaledType>
777          </Constraint>
778      </Attribute>
779      <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
780          <Description>
781              Specifies the amount of material resources required for the parent
782              segment, if applicable.
783          </Description>
```

```
784 </Attribute>
785 <Attribute Name="assemblyType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
786     <Description>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled
787         constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: the components of
788         the assembly are physically connected or in the same area.
789         Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily
790         physically connected or in the same area.</Description>
791     <Constraint Name="assemblyType">
792         <NominalScaledType>
793             <RequiredValue>Physical</RequiredValue>
794             <RequiredValue>Logical</RequiredValue>
795         </NominalScaledType>
796     </Constraint>
797 </Attribute>
798 <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
799     <Description>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal
800         scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an
801         assembly that is not intended to be split during the production
802         process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production,
803         such as a pallet of different materials or a batch
804         kit.</Description>
805     <Constraint Name="assemblyRelationship">
806         <NominalScaledType>
807             <RequiredValue>Permanent</RequiredValue>
808             <RequiredValue>Transient</RequiredValue>
809         </NominalScaledType>
810     </Constraint>
811 </Attribute>
812 </RoleClass>
813 <RoleClass Name="OperationsSegmentDependency" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
814     <Description>
815         Role class used for operations segment dependencies.
816     </Description>
817     <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
818         <Description>
819             Identification of the unique instance of the operations segment
820             dependency.
821         </Description>
822     </Attribute>
823     <Attribute Name="dependencyType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
824         <Description>
825             Defines the execution dependency constraints of one segment by
826             another segment.
827         </Description>
828     </Attribute>
829     <Attribute Name="dependencyFactor" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
830         <Description>Factor used by dependency.</Description>
831     </Attribute>
832 </RoleClass>
833 </RoleClass>
834 <RoleClass Name="OperationsScheduleModel" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
835     <Description>
836         Abstract role class used for structuring operations schedule roles.
837     </Description>
838     <RoleClass Name="OperationsSchedule" RefBaseClass Path="ProcessStructure">
839         <Description>Role class used for operations schedules.</Description>
840         <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
841             <Description>
842                 Uniquely identifies the operations schedule and could include
843                 version and revision identification.
844             </Description>
845         </Attribute>
846         <Attribute Name="operationsType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
847             <Description>Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal
848                 scaled constraint) "Production", "Maintenance", "Quality",
849                 "Inventory", or "Mixed". "Mixed" shall be used when the
```

```
850     operations definition contains several types of operations
851     requests and/or segment requirements.</Description>
852     <Constraint Name="operationsType">
853         <NominalScaledType>
854             <RequiredValue>Production</RequiredValue>
855             <RequiredValue>Maintenance</RequiredValue>
856             <RequiredValue>Quality</RequiredValue>
857             <RequiredValue>Inventory</RequiredValue>
858             <RequiredValue>Mixed</RequiredValue>
859         </NominalScaledType>
860     </Constraint>
861 </Attribute>
862 <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
863     <Description>
864         The starting time for the associated operations schedule, if
865         applicable.
866     </Description>
867 </Attribute>
868 <Attribute Name="endTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
869     <Description>
870         The ending time for the associated operations schedule, if
871         applicable.
872     </Description>
873 </Attribute>
874 <Attribute Name="publishedDate" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
875     <Description>
876         The date and time on which the operations schedule was published or
877         generated.
878     </Description>
879 </Attribute>
880 <Attribute Name="scheduledState" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
881     <Description>Indicates the state of the operations schedule. One of
882         (nominal scaled constraint) "Forecast" or "Released". Forecast:
883         the requirements have not been released for use. Released: the
884         requirements have been released for use.</Description>
885     <Constraint Name="scheduledState">
886         <NominalScaledType>
887             <RequiredValue>Forecast</RequiredValue>
888             <RequiredValue>Released</RequiredValue>
889         </NominalScaledType>
890     </Constraint>
891 </Attribute>
892 <RoleClass Name="OperationsRequest" RefBaseClassPath="ProcessStructure">
893     <Description>Role class used for operations requests.</Description>
894     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
895         <Description>
896             Unique identification of the operations request.
897         </Description>
898     </Attribute>
899     <Attribute Name="operationsType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
900         <Description>Describes the category of operations. One of (nominal
901             scaled constraint) "Production", "Maintenance", "Quality",
902             "Inventory", or "Mixed". "Mixed" shall be used when the
903             operations definition contains several types of operations
904             requests and/or segment requirements.</Description>
905         <Constraint Name="operationsType">
906             <NominalScaledType>
907                 <RequiredValue>Production</RequiredValue>
908                 <RequiredValue>Maintenance</RequiredValue>
909                 <RequiredValue>Quality</RequiredValue>
910                 <RequiredValue>Inventory</RequiredValue>
911                 <RequiredValue>Mixed</RequiredValue>
912             </NominalScaledType>
913         </Constraint>
914     </Attribute>
```

```
916 <Attribute Name="startTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
917   <Description>
918     When operation is to be started operations schedule, if applicable.
919   </Description>
920 </Attribute>
921 <Attribute Name="endTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
922   <Description>
923     When operation is to be completed, if applicable.
924   </Description>
925 </Attribute>
926 <Attribute Name="priority" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
927   <Description>The priority of the request, if applicable.</Description>
928 </Attribute>
929 <Attribute Name="scheduledState" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
930   <Description>Indicates the state of the operations request. One of
931     (nominal scaled constraint) "Forecast" or "Released". Forecast:
932       the requirements have not been released for use. Released: the
933         requirements have been released for use.</Description>
934 <Constraint Name="scheduledState">
935   <NominalScaledType>
936     <RequiredValue>Forecast</RequiredValue>
937     <RequiredValue>Released</RequiredValue>
938   </NominalScaledType>
939 </Constraint>
940 </Attribute>
941 </RoleClass>
942 <RoleClass Name="SegmentRequirement" RefBaseClass Path="Process">
943   <Description>Role class used for segment requirements.</Description>
944   <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
945     <Description>
946       Unique identification of the segment requirement.
947     </Description>
948   </Attribute>
949   <Attribute Name="operationsType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
950     <Description>Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal
951       scaled constraint) "Production", "Maintenance", "Quality",
952       "Inventory", or "Mixed". "Mixed" shall be used when the
953       operations definition contains several types of operations
954       requests and/or segment requirements.</Description>
955   <Constraint Name="operationsType">
956     <NominalScaledType>
957       <RequiredValue>Production</RequiredValue>
958       <RequiredValue>Maintenance</RequiredValue>
959       <RequiredValue>Quality</RequiredValue>
960       <RequiredValue>Inventory</RequiredValue>
961       <RequiredValue>Mixed</RequiredValue>
962     </NominalScaledType>
963   </Constraint>
964 </Attribute>
965 <Attribute Name="earliestStartTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
966   <Description>
967     The expected earliest start time of this segment requirement, if
968       applicable.
969   </Description>
970 </Attribute>
971 <Attribute Name="latestEndTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
972   <Description>
973     The expected latest ending time of this segment requirement, if
974       applicable.
975   </Description>
976 </Attribute>
977 <Attribute Name="duration" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
978   <Description>
979     The expected duration of this segment requirement, if applicable.
980     Note: this should match the associated segment duration.
981   </Description>
```

```
982 </Attribute>
983 <Attribute Name="segmentState" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
984     <Description>Indicates the state of the segment request. One of
985         (nominal scaled constraint) "Forecast" or "Released". Forecast:
986             the requirements have not been released for use. Released: the
987                 requirements have been released for use.</Description>
988     <Constraint Name="segmentState">
989         <NominalScaledType>
990             <RequiredValue>Forecast</RequiredValue>
991             <RequiredValue>Released</RequiredValue>
992         </NominalScaledType>
993     </Constraint>
994 </Attribute>
995 </RoleClass>
996 <RoleClass Name="PersonnelRequirement" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
997     <Description>Role class used for personnel requirements.</Description>
998     <Attribute Name="personnelUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
999         <Description>
1000             Defines the expected use of the personnel class or person.
1001         </Description>
1002     </Attribute>
1003     <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
1004         <Description>
1005             Specifies the amount of personnel resources required for the parent
1006                 segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the person
1007                     and personnel class sets.
1008         </Description>
1009     </Attribute>
1010 </RoleClass>
1011 <RoleClass Name="EquipmentRequirement" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
1012     <Description>Role class used for equipment requirements.</Description>
1013     <Attribute Name="equipmentUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1014         <Description>
1015             Defines the expected use of the equipment class or equipment.
1016         </Description>
1017     </Attribute>
1018     <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
1019         <Description>
1020             Specifies the amount of equipment resources required for the parent
1021                 segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the
1022                     equipment and equipment class sets.
1023         </Description>
1024     </Attribute>
1025     <Attribute Name="equipmentLevel" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1026         <Description>
1027             A definition of the level of the associated element of the equipment
1028                 model.
1029         </Description>
1030     </Attribute>
1031 </RoleClass>
1032 <RoleClass Name="PhysicalAssetRequirement" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
1033     <Description>
1034         Role class used for physical asset requirements.
1035     </Description>
1036     <Attribute Name="physicalAssetUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1037         <Description>
1038             Defines the expected use of the physical asset class or physical
1039                 asset.
1040         </Description>
1041     </Attribute>
1042     <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
1043         <Description>
1044             Specifies the amount of physical asset resources required for the
1045                 parent segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the
1046                     physical asset and physical asset class sets.
1047         </Description>
```

```
1048     </Attribute>
1049     <Attribute Name="equipmentLevel" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1050         <Description>
1051             A level definition for the associated element in the hierarchy of
1052                 the physical asset model.
1053             </Description>
1054         </Attribute>
1055     </RoleClass>
1056     <RoleClass Name="MaterialRequirement" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
1057         <Description>Role class used for material requirements.</Description>
1058         <Attribute Name="materialUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1059             <Description>Identifies the use of the material.</Description>
1060         </Attribute>
1061         <Attribute Name="storageLocation" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1062             <Description>
1063                 Identifies the proposed location of the material, if applicable.
1064             </Description>
1065         </Attribute>
1066         <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
1067             <Description>
1068                 Specifies the amount of material to be used, if applicable. Applies
1069                     to each member of the material lot, material definition, or
1070                         material class sets.
1071             </Description>
1072         </Attribute>
1073         <Attribute Name="assemblyType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1074             <Description>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled
1075                 constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: the components of
1076                     the assembly are physically connected or in the same area.
1077                     Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily
1078                         physically connected or in the same area.</Description>
1079             <Constraint Name="assemblyType">
1080                 <NominalScaledType>
1081                     <RequiredValue>Physical</RequiredValue>
1082                     <RequiredValue>Logical</RequiredValue>
1083                 </NominalScaledType>
1084             </Constraint>
1085         </Attribute>
1086         <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1087             <Description>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal
1088                 scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an
1089                     assembly that is not intended to be split during the production
1090                     process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production,
1091                         such as a pallet of different materials or a batch
1092                             kit.</Description>
1093             <Constraint Name="assemblyRelationship">
1094                 <NominalScaledType>
1095                     <RequiredValue>Permanent</RequiredValue>
1096                     <RequiredValue>Transient</RequiredValue>
1097                 </NominalScaledType>
1098             </Constraint>
1099         </Attribute>
1100     </RoleClass>
1101     <RoleClass Name="RequestedSegmentResponse" RefBaseClass Path="Process">
1102         <Description>
1103             Role class used for requested segment responses.
1104         </Description>
1105         <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1106             <Description>
1107                 Uniquely identifies the instance of a process segment executed.
1108             </Description>
1109         </Attribute>
1110         <Attribute Name="operationsType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1111             <Description>Describes the category of operations. One of (nominal
1112                 scaled constraint) "Production", "Maintenance", "Quality",
1113                     "Inventory", or "Mixed". "Mixed" shall be used when the
```

```
1114         operations response contains several categories of segment
1115         responses.</Description>
1116     <Constraint Name="operationsType">
1117         <NominalScaledType>
1118             <RequiredValue>Production</RequiredValue>
1119             <RequiredValue>Maintenance</RequiredValue>
1120             <RequiredValue>Quality</RequiredValue>
1121             <RequiredValue>Inventory</RequiredValue>
1122             <RequiredValue>Mixed</RequiredValue>
1123         </NominalScaledType>
1124     </Constraint>
1125 </Attribute>
1126 <Attribute Name="actualStartTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1127     <Description>
1128         The actual start time of this segment response.
1129     </Description>
1130 </Attribute>
1131 <Attribute Name="actualEndTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1132     <Description>
1133         The actual end time of this segment response.
1134     </Description>
1135 </Attribute>
1136 <Attribute Name="segmentState" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1137     <Description>Indicates the state of the segment response. One of
1138         (nominal scaled constraint) "Ready", "Completed", "Aborted", or
1139         "Holding".</Description>
1140 </Attribute>
1141 </RoleClass>
1142 </RoleClass>
1143 <RoleClass Name="OperationsPerformanceModel" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
1144     <Description>
1145         Abstract role class used for structuring operations performance roles.
1146     </Description>
1147     <RoleClass Name="OperationsPerformance" RefBaseClass Path="ProcessStructure">
1148         <Description>Role class used for operations performances.</Description>
1149         <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1150             <Description>
1151                 Uniquely identifies the operations performance and could include
1152                 version and revision identification.
1153             </Description>
1154         </Attribute>
1155         <Attribute Name="operationsType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1156             <Description>Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal
1157                 scaled constraint) "Production", "Maintenance", "Quality",
1158                 "Inventory", or "Mixed". "Mixed" shall be used when the
1159                 operations performance contains several categories of operations
1160                 responses and/or segment responses.</Description>
1161         <Constraint Name="operationsType">
1162             <NominalScaledType>
1163                 <RequiredValue>Production</RequiredValue>
1164                 <RequiredValue>Maintenance</RequiredValue>
1165                 <RequiredValue>Quality</RequiredValue>
1166                 <RequiredValue>Inventory</RequiredValue>
1167                 <RequiredValue>Mixed</RequiredValue>
1168             </NominalScaledType>
1169         </Constraint>
1170     </Attribute>
1171     <Attribute Name="startTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1172         <Description>
1173             The starting time for the associated operations performance, if
1174             applicable.
1175         </Description>
1176     </Attribute>
1177     <Attribute Name="endTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1178         <Description>
1179             The ending time for the associated operations performance, if
```

```
1180      applicable.  
1181      </Description>  
1182    </Attribute>  
1183    <Attribute Name="performanceState" Attribute DataType="xs:string">  
1184      <Description>Indicates the state of the operations performance. One of  
1185        (nominal scaled constraint) "Ready", "Completed", "Aborted", or  
1186        "Holding".</Description>  
1187      <Constraint Name="performanceState">  
1188        <NominalScaledType>  
1189          <RequiredValue>Ready</RequiredValue>  
1190          <RequiredValue>Completed</RequiredValue>  
1191          <RequiredValue>Aborted</RequiredValue>  
1192          <RequiredValue>Holding</RequiredValue>  
1193        </NominalScaledType>  
1194      </Constraint>  
1195    </Attribute>  
1196    <Attribute Name="publishedDate" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">  
1197      <Description>  
1198        The date and time on which the operations performance was published  
1199        or generated.  
1200      </Description>  
1201    </Attribute>  
1202  </RoleClass>  
1203  <RoleClass Name="OperationsResponse" RefBaseClass Path="ProcessStructure">  
1204    <Description>Role class used for operations responses.</Description>  
1205    <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">  
1206      <Description>Uniquely identifies the operations response.</Description>  
1207    </Attribute>  
1208    <Attribute Name="operationsType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">  
1209      <Description>Describes the category of operation. One of (nominal  
1210        scaled constraint) "Production", "Maintenance", "Quality",  
1211        "Inventory", or "Mixed". "Mixed" shall be used when the  
1212        operations response contains several categories of segment  
1213        responses.</Description>  
1214    <Constraint Name="operationsType">  
1215      <NominalScaledType>  
1216        <RequiredValue>Production</RequiredValue>  
1217        <RequiredValue>Maintenance</RequiredValue>  
1218        <RequiredValue>Quality</RequiredValue>  
1219        <RequiredValue>Inventory</RequiredValue>  
1220        <RequiredValue>Mixed</RequiredValue>  
1221      </NominalScaledType>  
1222    </Constraint>  
1223  </Attribute>  
1224  <Attribute Name="startTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">  
1225    <Description>  
1226      The starting time of this operations response.  
1227    </Description>  
1228  </Attribute>  
1229  <Attribute Name="endTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">  
1230    <Description>The ending time of this operations response.</Description>  
1231  </Attribute>  
1232  <Attribute Name="responseState" Attribute DataType="xs:string">  
1233    <Description>Indicates the state of the operations response. One of  
1234      (nominal scaled constraint) "Ready", "Completed", "Aborted", or  
1235      "Holding".</Description>  
1236    <Constraint Name="responseState">  
1237      <NominalScaledType>  
1238        <RequiredValue>Ready</RequiredValue>  
1239        <RequiredValue>Completed</RequiredValue>  
1240        <RequiredValue>Aborted</RequiredValue>  
1241        <RequiredValue>Holding</RequiredValue>  
1242      </NominalScaledType>  
1243    </Constraint>  
1244  </Attribute>  
1245 </RoleClass>
```

```

1246 <RoleClass Name="SegmentResponse" RefBaseClassPath="Process">
1247   <Description>Role class used for segment responses.</Description>
1248   <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1249     <Description>
1250       Uniquely identifies the instance of a process segment executed.
1251     </Description>
1252   </Attribute>
1253   <Attribute Name="operationsType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1254     <Description>Describes the category of operations. One of (nominal
1255       scaled constraint) "Production", "Maintenance", "Quality",
1256       "Inventory", or "Mixed". "Mixed" shall be used when the
1257       operations response contains several categories of segment
1258       responses.</Description>
1259   <Constraint Name="operationsType">
1260     <NominalScaledType>
1261       <RequiredValue>Production</RequiredValue>
1262       <RequiredValue>Maintenance</RequiredValue>
1263       <RequiredValue>Quality</RequiredValue>
1264       <RequiredValue>Inventory</RequiredValue>
1265       <RequiredValue>Mixed</RequiredValue>
1266     </NominalScaledType>
1267   </Constraint>
1268 </Attribute>
1269   <Attribute Name="actualStartTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
1270     <Description>
1271       The actual start time of this segment response.
1272     </Description>
1273   </Attribute>
1274   <Attribute Name="actualEndTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
1275     <Description>
1276       The actual end time of this segment response.
1277     </Description>
1278   </Attribute>
1279   <Attribute Name="segmentState" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1280     <Description>Indicates the state of the segment response. One of
1281       (nominal scaled constraint) "Ready", "Completed", "Aborted", or
1282       "Holding".</Description>
1283   <Constraint Name="segmentState">
1284     <NominalScaledType>
1285       <RequiredValue>Ready</RequiredValue>
1286       <RequiredValue>Completed</RequiredValue>
1287       <RequiredValue>Aborted</RequiredValue>
1288       <RequiredValue>Holding</RequiredValue>
1289     </NominalScaledType>
1290   </Constraint>
1291 </Attribute>
1292 </RoleClass>
1293 <RoleClass Name="PersonnelActual" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
1294   <Description>Role class used for personnel actual.</Description>
1295   <Attribute Name="personnelUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1296     <Description>
1297       Defines the actual use of the personnel class or person.
1298     </Description>
1299   </Attribute>
1300   <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
1301     <Description>
1302       Specifies the amount of personnel resources used in the parent
1303       segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the person
1304       or personnel class sets.
1305     </Description>
1306   </Attribute>
1307 </RoleClass>
1308 <RoleClass Name="EquipmentActual" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
1309   <Description>Role class used for equipment actual.</Description>
1310   <Attribute Name="equipmentUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1311     <Description>

```

```
1312     Defines the actual use of the equipment class or equipment.
1313     </Description>
1314   </Attribute>
1315   <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
1316     <Description>
1317       Specifies the amount of equipment resources used in the parent
1318       segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the
1319       equipment or equipment class sets.
1320     </Description>
1321   </Attribute>
1322 </RoleClass>
1323 <RoleClass Name="PhysicalAssetActual" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
1324   <Description>Role class used for physical asset actual.</Description>
1325   <Attribute Name="physicalAssetUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1326     <Description>Defines the actual use of the physical asset class or
1327       physical asset. Example for maintenance: Repaired, Removed,
1328       Replacement, Calibrated, Modified/Improved.</Description>
1329   </Attribute>
1330   <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
1331     <Description>
1332       Specifies the amount of physical asset resources used in the parent
1333       segment, if applicable. Applies to each member of the physical
1334       asset or physical asset class sets.
1335     </Description>
1336   </Attribute>
1337 </RoleClass>
1338 <RoleClass Name="MaterialActual" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
1339   <Description>Role class used for material actual.</Description>
1340   <Attribute Name="materialUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1341     <Description>Defines the actual use of the material. One of (nominal
1342       scaled constraint) "Consumable", "Consumed", "Produced",
1343       "Replaced Asset", "Replacement Asset", "Sample", "Returned
1344       Sample", "Carrier", "Returned Carrier". Defined values for
1345       production operations: Consumable, Consumed, Produced. Defined
1346       values for maintenance operations: Consumable, Replaced Asset,
1347       Replacement Asset. Defined values for quality operations:
1348       Consumable, Sample, Returned Sample. Defined values for inventory
1349       operations: Consumable, Carrier, Returned Carrier.</Description>
1350   <Constraint Name="materialUse">
1351     <NominalScaledType>
1352       <RequiredValue>Consumable</RequiredValue>
1353       <RequiredValue>Consumed</RequiredValue>
1354       <RequiredValue>Produced</RequiredValue>
1355       <RequiredValue>Replaced Asset</RequiredValue>
1356       <RequiredValue>Sample</RequiredValue>
1357       <RequiredValue>Returned Sample</RequiredValue>
1358       <RequiredValue>Carrier</RequiredValue>
1359       <RequiredValue>Returned Carrier</RequiredValue>
1360     </NominalScaledType>
1361   </Constraint>
1362 </Attribute>
1363 <Attribute Name="storageLocation" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1364   <Description>
1365     Identifies the actual location of the produced material, if
1366       applicable.
1367   </Description>
1368 </Attribute>
1369 <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
1370   <Description>
1371     Specifies the amount of material produced by the parent segment.
1372     Applies to each member of the material lot, material
1373       definition, or material class sets.
1374   </Description>
1375 </Attribute>
1376 <Attribute Name="assemblyType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1377   <Description>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled
```

```
1378     constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: components of the
1379     assembly are physically connected or in the same area. Logical:
1380     components of the assembly are not necessarily physically
1381     connected or in the same area.</Description>
1382     <Constraint Name="assemblyType">
1383         <NominalScaledType>
1384             <RequiredValue>Physical</RequiredValue>
1385             <RequiredValue>Logical</RequiredValue>
1386         </NominalScaledType>
1387     </Constraint>
1388 </Attribute>
1389 <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1390     <Description>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal
1391     scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an
1392     assembly that is not intended to be split during the production
1393     process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production,
1394     such as a pallet of different materials or a batch
1395     kit.</Description>
1396     <Constraint Name="assemblyRelationship">
1397         <NominalScaledType>
1398             <RequiredValue>Permanent</RequiredValue>
1399             <RequiredValue>Transient</RequiredValue>
1400         </NominalScaledType>
1401     </Constraint>
1402 </Attribute>
1403 </RoleClass>
1404 </RoleClass>
1405 <RoleClass Name="OperationsCapabilityModel" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
1406     <Description>
1407         Abstract role class used for structuring operations capability roles.
1408     </Description>
1409     <RoleClass Name="OperationsCapability" RefBaseClass Path="Process">
1410         <Description>Role class used for operations capabilities.</Description>
1411         <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1412             <Description>
1413                 Defines a unique instance of an operations capability for a
1414                 specified element of the equipment hierarchy model
1415                 (enterprise, site, area, work center, or work unit).
1416             </Description>
1417         </Attribute>
1418         <Attribute Name="capacityType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1419             <Description>The capacity type. One of (nominal scaled constraint)
1420                 "Used", "Unused", "Total", "Available", "Unattainable", or
1421                 "Committed".</Description>
1422         <Constraint Name="capacityType">
1423             <NominalScaledType>
1424                 <RequiredValue>Used</RequiredValue>
1425                 <RequiredValue>Unused</RequiredValue>
1426                 <RequiredValue>Total</RequiredValue>
1427                 <RequiredValue>Available</RequiredValue>
1428                 <RequiredValue>Unattainable</RequiredValue>
1429                 <RequiredValue>Committed</RequiredValue>
1430             </NominalScaledType>
1431         </Constraint>
1432     </Attribute>
1433     <Attribute Name="reason" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1434         <Description>Defines the reason for the capability type.</Description>
1435     </Attribute>
1436     <Attribute Name="confidenceFactor" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1437         <Description>
1438             A measure of the confidence of the capacity value.
1439         </Description>
1440     </Attribute>
1441     <Attribute Name="startTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1442         <Description>
1443             The starting date and time of the operations capability.
1444         </Description>
1445     </Attribute>
1446 
```

```
1444      </Description>
1445  </Attribute>
1446  <Attribute Name="endTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1447      <Description>
1448          The ending date and time of the operations capability.
1449      </Description>
1450  </Attribute>
1451  <Attribute Name="publishedDate" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1452      <Description>
1453          The date and time on which the operations capability was published
1454          or generated.
1455      </Description>
1456  </Attribute>
1457 </RoleClass>
1458 <RoleClass Name="PersonnelCapability" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
1459     <Description>Role class used for personnel capabilities.</Description>
1460     <Attribute Name="capabilityType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1461         <Description>The capability type. One of (nominal scaled constraint)
1462             "Used", "Unused", "Total", "Available", "Unattainable", or
1463             "Committed".</Description>
1464     <Constraint Name="capabilityType">
1465         <NominalScaledType>
1466             <RequiredValue>Used</RequiredValue>
1467             <RequiredValue>Unused</RequiredValue>
1468             <RequiredValue>Total</RequiredValue>
1469             <RequiredValue>Available</RequiredValue>
1470             <RequiredValue>Unattainable</RequiredValue>
1471             <RequiredValue>Committed</RequiredValue>
1472         </NominalScaledType>
1473     </Constraint>
1474 </Attribute>
1475 <Attribute Name="reason" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1476     <Description>Defines the reason for the capability type.</Description>
1477 </Attribute>
1478 <Attribute Name="confidenceFactor" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1479     <Description>
1480         A measure of the confidence of the capacity value.
1481     </Description>
1482 </Attribute>
1483 <Attribute Name="personnelUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1484     <Description>
1485         Defines the expected capability use of the personnel class or
1486         person.
1487     </Description>
1488 </Attribute>
1489 <Attribute Name="startTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1490     <Description>
1491         The starting time associated with the personnel capability.
1492     </Description>
1493 </Attribute>
1494 <Attribute Name="endTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1495     <Description>
1496         The ending time associated with the personnel capability.
1497     </Description>
1498 </Attribute>
1499 <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
1500     <Description>
1501         Specifies the quantity of the personnel capability defined, if
1502         applicable.
1503     </Description>
1504 </Attribute>
1505 </RoleClass>
1506 <RoleClass Name="EquipmentCapability" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
1507     <Description>Role class used for equipment capabilities.</Description>
1508     <Attribute Name="capabilityType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1509         <Description>The capability type. One of (nominal scaled constraint)
```

```
1510         "Used", "Unused", "Total", "Available", "Unattainable", or
1511         "Committed".</Description>
1512     <Constraint Name="capabilityType">
1513         <NominalScaledType>
1514             <RequiredValue>Used</RequiredValue>
1515             <RequiredValue>Unused</RequiredValue>
1516             <RequiredValue>Total</RequiredValue>
1517             <RequiredValue>Available</RequiredValue>
1518             <RequiredValue>Unattainable</RequiredValue>
1519             <RequiredValue>Committed</RequiredValue>
1520         </NominalScaledType>
1521     </Constraint>
1522   </Attribute>
1523   <Attribute Name="reason" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1524     <Description>Defines the reason for the capability type.</Description>
1525   </Attribute>
1526   <Attribute Name="confidenceFactor" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1527     <Description>
1528       A measure of the confidence of the capacity value.
1529     </Description>
1530   </Attribute>
1531   <Attribute Name="equipmentUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1532     <Description>
1533       Defines the expected capability use of the equipment class or
1534       equipment.
1535     </Description>
1536   </Attribute>
1537   <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
1538     <Description>
1539       The starting time associated with the equipment capability.
1540     </Description>
1541   </Attribute>
1542   <Attribute Name="endTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
1543     <Description>
1544       The ending time associated with the equipment capability.
1545     </Description>
1546   </Attribute>
1547   <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
1548     <Description>
1549       Specifies the quantity of the equipment capability defined, if
1550       applicable.
1551     </Description>
1552   </Attribute>
1553 </RoleClass>
1554 <RoleClass Name="PhysicalAssetCapability" RefBaseClassPath="BR">
1555   <Description>
1556     Role class used for physical asset capabilities.
1557   </Description>
1558   <Attribute Name="capabilityType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1559     <Description>The capability type. One of (nominal scaled constraint)
1560       "Used", "Unused", "Total", "Available", "Unattainable", or
1561       "Committed".</Description>
1562     <Constraint Name="capabilityType">
1563         <NominalScaledType>
1564             <RequiredValue>Used</RequiredValue>
1565             <RequiredValue>Unused</RequiredValue>
1566             <RequiredValue>Total</RequiredValue>
1567             <RequiredValue>Available</RequiredValue>
1568             <RequiredValue>Unattainable</RequiredValue>
1569             <RequiredValue>Committed</RequiredValue>
1570         </NominalScaledType>
1571     </Constraint>
1572   </Attribute>
1573   <Attribute Name="reason" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1574     <Description>Defines the reason for the capability type.</Description>
1575   </Attribute>
```

```
1576 <Attribute Name="confidenceFactor" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1577   <Description>
1578     A measure of the confidence of the capacity value.
1579   </Description>
1580 </Attribute>
1581 <Attribute Name="physicalAssetUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1582   <Description>
1583     Defines the expected capability use of the physical asset class or
1584     physical asset.
1585   </Description>
1586 </Attribute>
1587 <Attribute Name="startTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1588   <Description>
1589     The starting time associated with the physical asset capability.
1590   </Description>
1591 </Attribute>
1592 <Attribute Name="endTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1593   <Description>
1594     The ending time associated with the physical asset capability.
1595   </Description>
1596 </Attribute>
1597 <Attribute Name="quantity" Attribute DataType="xs:decimal">
1598   <Description>
1599     Specifies the quantity of the physical asset capability defined, if
1600     applicable.
1601   </Description>
1602 </Attribute>
1603 </RoleClass>
1604 <RoleClass Name="MaterialCapability" RefBaseClass Path="BR">
1605   <Description>Role class used for material capabilities.</Description>
1606 <Attribute Name="capabilityType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1607   <Description>The capability type. One of (nominal scaled constraint)
1608     "Used", "Unused", "Total", "Available", "Unattainable", or
1609     "Committed".</Description>
1610 <Constraint Name="capabilityType">
1611   <NominalScaledType>
1612     <RequiredValue>Used</RequiredValue>
1613     <RequiredValue>Unused</RequiredValue>
1614     <RequiredValue>Total</RequiredValue>
1615     <RequiredValue>Available</RequiredValue>
1616     <RequiredValue>Unattainable</RequiredValue>
1617     <RequiredValue>Committed</RequiredValue>
1618   </NominalScaledType>
1619 </Constraint>
1620 </Attribute>
1621 <Attribute Name="reason" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1622   <Description>Defines the reason for the capability type.</Description>
1623 </Attribute>
1624 <Attribute Name="confidenceFactor" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1625   <Description>
1626     A measure of the confidence of the capacity value.
1627   </Description>
1628 </Attribute>
1629 <Attribute Name="materialUse" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
1630   <Description>
1631     Defines the expected capability use of the material.
1632   </Description>
1633 </Attribute>
1634 <Attribute Name="startTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1635   <Description>
1636     The starting time associated with the material capability.
1637   </Description>
1638 </Attribute>
1639 <Attribute Name="endTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">
1640   <Description>
1641     The ending time associated with the material capability.
```

```
1642      </Description>
1643  </Attribute>
1644  <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
1645    <Description>
1646      Specifies the quantity of the material capability defined, if
1647      applicable.
1648    </Description>
1649  </Attribute>
1650  <Attribute Name="assemblyType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1651    <Description>Defines the type of the assembly. One of (nominal scaled
1652      constraint) "Physical" or "Logical". Physical: the components of
1653      the assembly are physically connected or in the same area.
1654      Logical: the components of the assembly are not necessarily
1655      physically connected or in the same area.</Description>
1656  <Constraint Name="assemblyType">
1657    <NominalScaledType>
1658      <RequiredValue>Physical</RequiredValue>
1659      <RequiredValue>Logical</RequiredValue>
1660    </NominalScaledType>
1661  </Constraint>
1662 </Attribute>
1663 <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1664    <Description>Defines the type of the relationships. One of (nominal
1665      scaled constraint) "Permanent" or "Transient". Permanent: an
1666      assembly that is not intended to be split during the production
1667      process. Transient: a temporary assembly used during production,
1668      such as a pallet of different materials or a batch
1669      kit.</Description>
1670  <Constraint Name="assemblyRelationship">
1671    <NominalScaledType>
1672      <RequiredValue>Permanent</RequiredValue>
1673      <RequiredValue>Transient</RequiredValue>
1674    </NominalScaledType>
1675  </Constraint>
1676 </Attribute>
1677 </RoleClass>
1678 </RoleClass>
1679 <RoleClass Name="ProcessSegmentCapability" RefBaseClassPath="Process">
1680   <Description>Role class used for process segment capabilities.</Description>
1681   <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1682     <Description>
1683       Defines a unique instance of a process segment capability for a
1684       specified element of the equipment hierarchy model (enterprise,
1685       site, area, work center, or work unit).
1686     </Description>
1687   </Attribute>
1688   <Attribute Name="capacityType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1689     <Description>The capacity type. One of (nominal scaled constraint)
1690       "Available", "Unattainable", or "Committed".</Description>
1691     <Constraint Name="capacityType">
1692       <NominalScaledType>
1693         <RequiredValue>Available</RequiredValue>
1694         <RequiredValue>Unattainable</RequiredValue>
1695         <RequiredValue>Committed</RequiredValue>
1696       </NominalScaledType>
1697     </Constraint>
1698   </Attribute>
1699   <Attribute Name="reason" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
1700     <Description>Gives the reason for the capacity type.</Description>
1701   </Attribute>
1702   <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
1703     <Description>
1704       The starting time of the time span defining the capacity type.
1705     </Description>
1706   </Attribute>
1707   <Attribute Name="endTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
```

```
1708     <Description>
1709         The ending time of the time span defining the capacity type.
1710     </Description>
1711     </Attribute>
1712   </RoleClass>
1713 </RoleClassLib>
```

Appendix C AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib

Listing 3 depicts the complete source code of the AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib.

Listing 3: AutomationML B2MML role class library.

```
1 <RoleClassLib Name="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib">
2   <Description>B2MML Role Class Library</Description>
3   <Version>1.0.0</Version>
4   <RoleClass Name="B2mmlData"
5     RefBaseClassPath="AutomationMLBPRRoleClassLib/ExternalData">
6     <Description>
7       B2mmlData shall be used in order to reference external B2MML documents,
8       using the mechanism defined in BPR External Data Reference.
9     </Description>
10    </RoleClass>
11 </RoleClassLib>
```

Appendix D Examples for Referencing External B2MML Documents

Clauses D.1 and D.2 exemplify the two distinct ways of referencing B2MML data from AML, while Clause D.2 depicts a more complex example taken from IEC 62714-1.

D.1 Referencing a B2MML Document from AML

In this example, an internal element inside an AML document references an element from B2MML by specifying the complete document as the reference target. Listing 4 shows the relevant excerpt (the instance hierarchy) of the AML document that contains an internal element "Turntable". A child internal element is added to this turntable, representing a B2MML document. By applying an external interface of type ExternalDataReference it references the B2MML document "Turntable.b2mml" through the refURI attribute. As the given URI does not contain a fragment part, the root element of the B2MML document is implicitly referenced – in this example an equipment with the ID "Turntable" (cf. Listing 5).

Listing 4: InstanceHierarchy excerpt of document Example-01-B2MML-Document.aml.

```

1 <InstanceHierarchy Name="B2mmlDocument">
2   <Description>
3     Example for referencing an IEC 62264 element represented by a B2MML document.
4   </Description>
5   <Version>1.0.0</Version>
6   <InternalElement Name="Turntable" ID="Turntable">
7     <InternalElement Name="TurntableB2mmlDocument" ID="TurntableB2mmlDocument">
8       <ExternalInterface Name="B2mml" ID="B2mml" RefBaseClassPath="EDR">
9         <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
10        <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
11      </Attribute>
12      <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
13        <Value>./Turntable.b2mml</Value>
14      </Attribute>
15    </ExternalInterface>
16    <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2mmlData" />
17  </InternalElement>
18  <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
19  <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="Equipment" />
20 </InternalElement>
21 </InstanceHierarchy>

```

NOTE: By omitting the fragment part of the URI, the root element of the given document is referenced.

NOTE: Turntable specifies role class "Equipment" – the referenced B2MML element must be of type "Equipment" as well.

NOTE: As the internal element specifies role class "Equipment", it must also specify the equipment level by assigning one of the corresponding role classes of the extended role class hierarchy, in this case "WorkCell" is chosen.

Listing 5 depicts a B2MML document that contains only one element of type equipment identified by the term "Turntable", exhibiting the minimum set of B2MML attributes: ID, Description, and EquipmentLevel.

Listing 5: Contents of document Turntable.b2mml.

```

1 <Equipment xmlns="http://www.mesa.org/xml/B2MML-V0600">
2   <ID>Turntable</ID>
3   <Description>
4     Turns products towards distinct work cells for further production.
5   </Description>
6   <EquipmentLevel>
7     <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
8   </EquipmentLevel>
9 </Equipment>

```

D.2 Referencing a Specific Element within a B2MML Document from AML

In this example, a specific element of a more complex B2MML document is referenced from an AML document with a very simple instance hierarchy containing an internal element named “Turtable”. A child internal element within this “Turtable” element resembles a B2MML document, as clarified with the role class B2mmlData. It specifies an ExternalDataReference referencing the element with ID “Turtable” from the B2MML document “Equipment.b2mml”, by declaring “./Equipment.b2mml#Turtable” as refURI (cf. Listing 6). The fragment part “Turtable” is the unique ID of an element within the equipment catalog given in Listing 7.

Listing 6: InstanceHierarchy excerpt of document Example-02-B2MML-Element.aml.

```
1 <InstanceHierarchy Name="B2mmlElement">
2   <Description>
3     Example for referencing an IEC 62264 element that is one of many elements
4     within a B2MML document.
5   </Description>
6   <Version>1.0.0</Version>
7   <InternalElement Name="Turtable" ID="Turtable">
8     <InternalElement Name="TurtableB2mmlDocument" ID="TurtableB2mmlDocument">
9       <ExternalInterface Name="B2mml" ID="B2mml" RefBaseClassPath="EDR">
10      <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
11        <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
12      </Attribute>
13      <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
14        <Value>./Equipment.b2mml#Turtable</Value>
15      </Attribute>
16    </ExternalInterface>
17    <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2mmlData" />
18  </InternalElement>
19  <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
20  <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="Equipment" />
21 </InternalElement>
22 </InstanceHierarchy>
```

NOTE: By providing a fragment part in the URI, the corresponding (sub) element of the given document is referenced.

Listing 7 depicts a slightly more complex B2MML document “Equipment.b2mml” that contains a sequence of equipment elements within an equipment information root element. Each of the equipment elements provides a unique ID, a Description, and an EquipmentLevel sub element. The string content of the ID sub element is used to reference a specific equipment element.

Listing 7: Contents of document Equipment.b2mml.

```
1 <EquipmentInformation xmlns="http://www.mesa.org/xml/B2MML-V0600">
2   <Equipment>
3     <ID>Conveyer</ID>
4     <Description>Delivers products from one work cell to another.</Description>
5     <EquipmentLevel>
6       <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
7     </EquipmentLevel>
8   </Equipment>
9   <Equipment>
10    <ID>Turntable</ID>
11    <Description>
12      Turns products towards distinct work cells for further production.
13    </Description>
14    <EquipmentLevel>
15      <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
16    </EquipmentLevel>
17  </Equipment>
18  <Equipment>
19    <ID>Robot</ID>
20    <Description>Assembles products from intermediate products.</Description>
21    <EquipmentLevel>
22      <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
23    </EquipmentLevel>
24  </Equipment>
25 </EquipmentInformation>
```

D.3 Process-Product-Resource (PPR)

The following instance builds upon the example given in Clause A.2.6 of IEC 62714-1. The setup is explained in Table 136 and in Figures 25 and 26. The AutomationML document is presented in Listing 8. The relevant B2MML documents are depicted in Listings 9 to 12, resembling respectively Equipment, Physical Assets, Material, and Process Segments.

Product	Wheel	A wheel that is to be attached to a car.
	Car-without-Wheels	A car that has no wheels attached.
	Car-with-Wheels	A car with wheels attached.
Resource	Conveyer-1	Delivers cars without wheels from the product source to the turntable.
	Conveyer-2	Delivers cars without wheels from the turntable to the product drain for finished products.
	Turntable	Turns cars without wheels either towards the product drain for unfinished products or towards Conveyor-2.
	Robot	Assembles wheels to cars without wheels.
Process	Transport-1	Transport-1 is accomplished with Conveyer-1. Cars without wheels are delivered from the product source to the turntable.
	Transport-2	Transport-2 is accomplished with Conveyer-2. Cars without wheels are delivered from the turntable to the robot.
	Transport-3	Transport-3 is accomplished with Conveyer-2. Cars with wheels are delivered from the robot to the product drain for finished products.
	Turn	Turning is accomplished by the turntable that might hold a Car-without-Wheels. Cars without wheels that should be assembled are turned towards Conveyer-2, the ones that should not be further processed are turned towards the product drain for unfinished products.
	Assemble	Assembling is accomplished by the robot, which attaches Wheels to Cars-without-Wheels in order to transform them into Cars-with-Wheels.

Table 136: Setup of the PPR example (from IEC 62714-1).

Figure 25 resembles a shop floor setup, showing the flow of products (material) through the resources. Processes are represented as arrows and indicate the direction of material flow. In Figures 25 and 26 dark gray trapezoid elements depict resources, and light gray stadiums depict products (in Figure 26, additionally, white rectangles depict processes). In Figure 25 white trapezoids resemble resources that are not regarded in detail in this scenario.

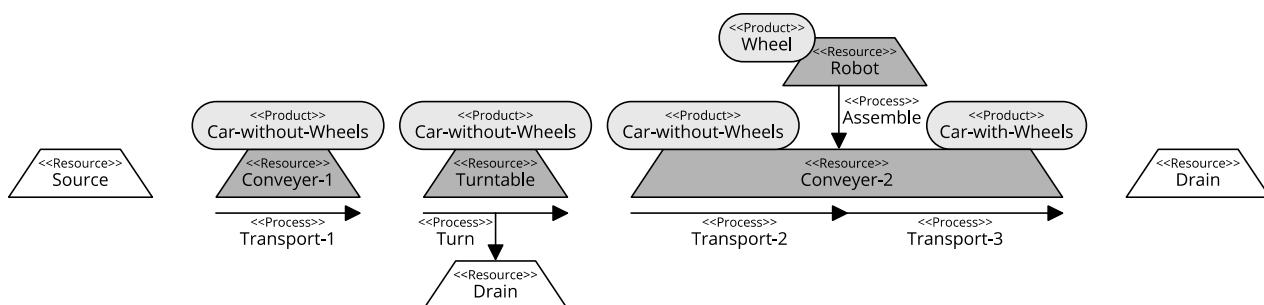


Figure 25: Visualization of the PPR example (from IEC 62714-1).

Figure 26 depicts the complete set of internal links defined for the given scenario. Solid lines connect processes to resources, dotted lines connect processes to products, and dashed lines connect resources to products.

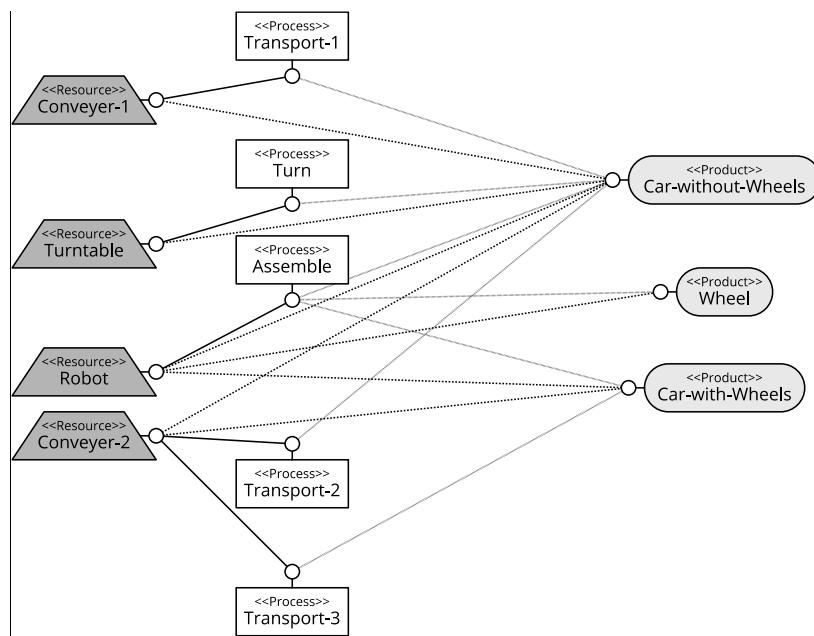


Figure 26: Internal links of the PPR example (from IEC 62714-1).

Listing 8 resembles (i) the InstanceHierarchy, (ii) the RoleClassLib (for material and equipment classes), and (iii) the SystemUnitClassLib (for the material definitions) excerpt of the AutomationML document for the PPR example. It references various elements from different B2MML documents, e.g. the InternalElement with the ID "ID-Conveyer-1" (line 9) references an IEC 62264 equipment encoded in B2MML through an ExternalInterface of type ExternalDataReference (line 13). In lines 17-19, the attribute "refURI" refers to "./PPR-Equipment.b2mml#Conveyer-1", which resolves to the file "PPR-Equipment.b2mml" and the element with ID "Conveyer-1" (cf. Listing 9). In addition, since the equipment in question is of equipment level "WorkCell", in line 24 the corresponding role class "AutomationMLExtendedRoleClassLib/WorkCell" is specified for the InternalElement. The conveyer "Conveyer-1" itself is marked as implementing role class "Equipment" of the AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib. Also, it refers to its equipment class through a supported role class in lines 25-26

Listing 8: InstanceHierarchy, RoleClassLib, and SystemUnitClassLib excerpts of document Example-03-B2MML-PPR.aml.

```

1 <InstanceHierarchy Name="B2MML-PPR-IH">
2   <Description>
3     Example for referencing multiple IEC 62264 elements that reside in multiple
4     B2MML documents that hold multiple B2MML elements. Additionally, AML
5     objects are aligned with PPR roles.
6   </Description>
7   <Version>1.0.0</Version>
8   <InternalElement Name="Equipment" ID="Equipment">
9     <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-1" ID="Conveyer-1">
10       <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-11" />
11       <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-1-B2MML-Document"
12         ID="Conveyer-1-B2MML-Document">
13         <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-11">
14           <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
15             <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
16           </Attribute>
17           <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
18             <Value>./PPR-Equipment.b2mml#Conveyer-1</Value>
19           </Attribute>
20         </ExternalInterface>
21         <RoleRequirements
22           RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLE2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
23       </InternalElement>
24       <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
  
```

```

25      <SupportedRoleClass
26          RefRoleClassPath="B2MML-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Conveyer-Class" />
27      <InternalLink Name="C1_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Conveyer-1:PPR"
28          RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels-Instance:PPR" />
29          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="Equipment" />
30      </InternalElement>
31      <InternalElement Name="Turntable" ID="Turntable">
32          <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-12" />
33          <InternalElement Name="Turntable-B2MML-Document"
34              ID="Turntable-B2MML-Document">
35              <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-12">
36                  <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
37                      <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
38                  </Attribute>
39                  <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
40                      <Value>./PPR-Equipment.b2mml#Turntable</Value>
41                  </Attribute>
42              </ExternalInterface>
43              <RoleRequirements
44                  RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
45      </InternalElement>
46      <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
47      <SupportedRoleClass
48          RefRoleClassPath="B2MML-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Turntable-Class" />
49      <InternalLink Name="TT_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Turntable:PPR"
50          RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels-Instance:PPR" />
51          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="Equipment" />
52      </InternalElement>
53      <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-2" ID="Conveyer-2">
54          <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-13" />
55          <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-2-B2MML-Document"
56              ID="Conveyer-2-B2MML-Document">
57              <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-13">
58                  <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
59                      <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
60                  </Attribute>
61                  <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
62                      <Value>./PPR-Equipment.b2mml#Conveyer-2</Value>
63                  </Attribute>
64              </ExternalInterface>
65              <RoleRequirements
66                  RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
67      </InternalElement>
68      <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
69      <SupportedRoleClass
70          RefRoleClassPath="B2MML-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Conveyer-Class" />
71      <InternalLink Name="C2_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Conveyer-2:PPR"
72          RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels-Instance:PPR" />
73      <InternalLink Name="C2_CWW" RefPartnerSideA="Conveyer-2:PPR"
74          RefPartnerSideB="Car-with-Wheel-Instance:PPR" />
75          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="Equipment" />
76      </InternalElement>
77      <InternalElement Name="Robot" ID="Robot">
78          <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-14" />
79          <InternalElement Name="Robot-B2MML-Document" ID="Robot-B2MML-Document">
80              <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-14">
81                  <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
82                      <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
83                  </Attribute>
84                  <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
85                      <Value>./PPR-Equipment.b2mml#Robot</Value>
86                  </Attribute>
87              </ExternalInterface>
88              <RoleRequirements
89                  RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
90      </InternalElement>

```

```
91      <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
92      <SupportedRoleClass
93          RefRoleClassPath="B2MML-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Robot-Class" />
94          <InternalLink Name="R_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Robot:PPR"
95              RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels-Instance:PPR" />
96          <InternalLink Name="R_W" RefPartnerSideA="Robot:PPR"
97              RefPartnerSideB="Wheel-Instance:PPR" />
98          <InternalLink Name="R_CWW" RefPartnerSideA="Robot:PPR"
99              RefPartnerSideB="Car-with-Wheel-Instance:PPR" />
100         <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="Equipment" />
101     </InternalElement>
102     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ResourceStructure" />
103 </InternalElement>
104 <InternalElement Name="EquipmentClasses" ID="EquipmentClasses">
105     <Description>IH representations of "Equipment Class" role
106     classes.</Description>
107     <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-Class" ID="Conveyer-Class">
108         <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-Class-Document"
109             ID="Conveyer-Class-Document">
110             <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-20">
111                 <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
112                     <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
113                 </Attribute>
114                 <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
115                     <Value>./PPR-Equipment.b2mml#Conveyer-Class</Value>
116                 </Attribute>
117             </ExternalInterface>
118             <RoleRequirements
119                 RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
120         </InternalElement>
121         <RoleRequirements
122             RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2MML-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Conveyer-Class"
123             />
124     </InternalElement>
125     <InternalElement Name="Turntable-Class" ID="Turntable-Class">
126         <InternalElement Name="Turntable-Class-Document"
127             ID="Turntable-Class-Document">
128             <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-21">
129                 <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
130                     <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
131                 </Attribute>
132                 <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
133                     <Value>./PPR-Equipment.b2mml#Turntable-Class</Value>
134                 </Attribute>
135             </ExternalInterface>
136             <RoleRequirements
137                 RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
138         </InternalElement>
139         <RoleRequirements
140             RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2MML-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Turntable-Class"
141             />
142     </InternalElement>
143     <InternalElement Name="Robot-Class" ID="Robot-Class">
144         <InternalElement Name="Robot-Class-Document" ID="Robot-Class-Document">
145             <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-22">
146                 <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
147                     <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
148                 </Attribute>
149                 <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
150                     <Value>./PPR-Equipment.b2mml#Robot-Class</Value>
151                 </Attribute>
152             </ExternalInterface>
153             <RoleRequirements
154                 RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
155         </InternalElement>
156         <RoleRequirements
```

```
157     RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2MML-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Robot-Class" />
158   </InternalElement>
159   <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ResourceStructure" />
160 </InternalElement>
161 <InternalElement Name="PhysicalAssets" ID="PhysicalAssets">
162   <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-1-PA" ID="Conveyer-1-PA"
163     RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
164       "B2MML-PPR-SUC/PhysicalAssetClasses/Short-Conveyer-PA-Class">
165     <Description>
166       Delivers cars without wheels from the product source to the turntable.
167     </Description>
168     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
169       <Value>Conveyer-1-PA</Value>
170     </Attribute>
171     <Attribute Name="fixedAssetId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
172       <Value>001</Value>
173     </Attribute>
174     <Attribute Name="vendorId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
175       <Value>CM12345</Value>
176     </Attribute>
177     <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-1-PA-B2MML-Document"
178       ID="Conveyer-1-PA-B2MML-Document">
179       <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" ID="B2MML-29" RefBaseClassPath="EDR">
180         <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
181           <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
182         </Attribute>
183         <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
184           <Value>./PPR-PhysicalAssets.b2mml#Conveyer-1-PA</Value>
185         </Attribute>
186       </ExternalInterface>
187       <RoleRequirements
188         RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
189     </InternalElement>
190     <RoleRequirements
191       RefBaseRoleClassPath=
192         "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAsset" />
193   </InternalElement>
194   <InternalElement Name="Turntable-PA" ID="Turntable-PA"
195     RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
196       "B2MML-PPR-SUC/PhysicalAssetClasses/Turntable-PA-Class">
197     <Description>
198       Turns cars without wheels either towards the product drain for unfinished
199       products or towards Conveyor-2.
200     </Description>
201     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
202       <Value>Turntable-PA</Value>
203     </Attribute>
204     <Attribute Name="fixedAssetId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
205       <Value>003</Value>
206     </Attribute>
207     <Attribute Name="vendorId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
208       <Value>TM123</Value>
209     </Attribute>
210     <InternalElement Name="Turntable-PA-B2MML-Document"
211       ID="Turntable-PA-B2MML-Document">
212       <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" ID="B2MML-26" RefBaseClassPath="EDR">
213         <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
214           <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
215         </Attribute>
216         <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
217           <Value>./PPR-PhysicalAssets.b2mml#Turntable-PA</Value>
218         </Attribute>
219       </ExternalInterface>
220       <RoleRequirements
221         RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
222     </InternalElement>
```

```
223     <RoleRequirements
224         RefBaseRoleClassPath=
225         "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAsset" />
226     </InternalElement>
227     <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-2-PA" ID="Conveyer-2-PA"
228         RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
229         "B2MML-PPR-SUC/PhysicalAssetClasses/Long-Conveyer-PA-Class">
230         <Description>
231             Delivers cars without wheels from the turntable to the product drain for
232             finished products.
233         </Description>
234         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
235             <Value>Conveyer-2-PA</Value>
236         </Attribute>
237         <Attribute Name="fixedAssetId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
238             <Value>002</Value>
239         </Attribute>
240         <Attribute Name="vendorId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
241             <Value>CM54321</Value>
242         </Attribute>
243         <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-2-PA-B2MML-Document"
244             ID="Conveyer-2-PA-B2MML-Document">
245             <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" ID="B2MML-28" RefBaseClassPath="EDR">
246                 <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
247                     <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
248                 </Attribute>
249                 <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
250                     <Value>./PPR-PhysicalAssets.b2mml#Conveyer-2-PA</Value>
251                 </Attribute>
252             </ExternalInterface>
253             <RoleRequirements
254                 RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
255             </InternalElement>
256             <RoleRequirements
257                 RefBaseRoleClassPath=
258                 "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAsset" />
259             </InternalElement>
260             <InternalElement Name="Robot-PA" ID="Robot-PA"
261                 RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
262                 "B2MML-PPR-SUC/PhysicalAssetClasses/Robot-PA-Class">
263                 <Description>Assembles wheels to cars without wheels.</Description>
264                 <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
265                     <Value>Robot-PA</Value>
266                 </Attribute>
267                 <Attribute Name="fixedAssetId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
268                     <Value>004</Value>
269                 </Attribute>
270                 <Attribute Name="vendorId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
271                     <Value>RM321</Value>
272                 </Attribute>
273                 <InternalElement Name="Robot-PA-B2MML-Document"
274                     ID="Robot-PA-B2MML-Document">
275                     <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" ID="B2MML-27" RefBaseClassPath="EDR">
276                         <Attribute Name="MIMEType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
277                             <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
278                         </Attribute>
279                         <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
280                             <Value>./PPR-PhysicalAssets.b2mml#Robot-PA</Value>
281                         </Attribute>
282                     </ExternalInterface>
283                     <RoleRequirements
284                         RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
285                     </InternalElement>
286                     <RoleRequirements
287                         RefBaseRoleClassPath=
288                         "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/PhysicalAssetModel/PhysicalAsset" />
```

```
289      </InternalElement>
290      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ResourceStructure" />
291  </InternalElement>
292  <InternalElement Name="MaterialDefinitions" ID="MaterialDefinitions">
293      <Description>IH representations of "Material Definition" system unit
294          classes.</Description>
295      <InternalElement Name="Wheel" ID="Wheel-Instance"
296          RefBaseSystemUnitPath="B2MML-PPR-SUC/MaterialDefinitions/Wheel">
297          <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" ID="PPR-20" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" />
298          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
299      </InternalElement>
300      <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels" ID="Car-without-Wheels-Instance"
301          RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
302              "B2MML-PPR-SUC/MaterialDefinitions/Car-without-Wheels">
303              <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" ID="PPR-21" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" />
304              <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
305      </InternalElement>
306      <InternalElement Name="Car-with-Wheels" ID="Car-with-Wheel-Instance"
307          RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
308              "B2MML-PPR-SUC/MaterialDefinitions/Car-with-Wheels">
309              <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" ID="PPR-22" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" />
310              <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
311      </InternalElement>
312      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProductStructure" />
313  </InternalElement>
314  <InternalElement Name="MaterialClasses" ID="MaterialClasses">
315      <Description>IH representations of "Material Class" role classes.</Description>
316      <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels-Class" ID="Car-without-Wheels-Class">
317          <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels-Class-Document"
318              ID="Car-without-Wheels-Class-Document">
319              <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-23">
320                  <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
321                      <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
322                  </Attribute>
323                  <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
324                      <Value>./PPR-Material.b2mml#Car-without-Wheels-Class</Value>
325                  </Attribute>
326              </ExternalInterface>
327              <RoleRequirements
328                  RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
329          </InternalElement>
330          <RoleRequirements
331              RefBaseRoleClassPath=
332                  "B2MML-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Car-without-Wheels-Class" />
333      </InternalElement>
334      <InternalElement Name="Wheel-Class" ID="Wheel-Class">
335          <InternalElement Name="Wheel-Class-Document" ID="Wheel-Class-Document">
336              <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-24">
337                  <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
338                      <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
339                  </Attribute>
340                  <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
341                      <Value>./PPR-Material.b2mml#Wheel-Class</Value>
342                  </Attribute>
343              </ExternalInterface>
344              <RoleRequirements
345                  RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
346          </InternalElement>
347          <RoleRequirements
348              RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2MML-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Wheel-Class" />
349      </InternalElement>
350      <InternalElement Name="Car-with-Wheels-Class" ID="Car-with-Wheels-Class">
351          <InternalElement Name="Car-with-Wheels-Class-Document"
352              ID="Car-with-Wheels-Class-Document">
353              <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-25">
354                  <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
```

```
355          <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
356      </Attribute>
357      <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
358          <Value>./PPR-Material.b2mml#Car-with-Wheels-Class</Value>
359      </Attribute>
360      </ExternalInterface>
361      <RoleRequirements
362          RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
363      </InternalElement>
364      <RoleRequirements
365          RefBaseRoleClassPath=
366          "B2MML-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Car-with-Wheels-Class" />
367      </InternalElement>
368      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProductStructure" />
369  </InternalElement>
370  <InternalElement Name="ProcessSegments" ID="ProcessSegments">
371      <InternalElement Name="Transport-1" ID="Transport-1">
372          <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-15" />
373          <InternalElement Name="Transport-1-B2MML-Document"
374              ID="Transport-1-B2MML-Document3">
375              <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-15">
376                  <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
377                      <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
378                  </Attribute>
379                  <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
380                      <Value>./PPR-ProcessSegments.b2mml#Transport-1</Value>
381                  </Attribute>
382          </ExternalInterface>
383          <RoleRequirements
384              RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
385      </InternalElement>
386      <InternalLink Name="T1_C1" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-1:PPR"
387          RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-1:PPR" />
388      <InternalLink Name="T1_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-1:PPR"
389          RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels-Instance:PPR" />
390          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegment" />
391  </InternalElement>
392  <InternalElement Name="Turn" ID="Turn">
393      <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-16" />
394      <InternalElement Name="Turn-B2MML-Document" ID="Turn-B2MML-Document">
395          <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-16">
396              <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
397                  <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
398              </Attribute>
399              <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
400                  <Value>./PPR-ProcessSegments.b2mml#Turn</Value>
401              </Attribute>
402      </ExternalInterface>
403      <RoleRequirements
404          RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
405  </InternalElement>
406  <InternalLink Name="T_TT" RefPartnerSideA="Turn:PPR"
407      RefPartnerSideB="Turntable:PPR" />
408  <InternalLink Name="T_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Turn:PPR"
409      RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels-Instance:PPR" />
410          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegment" />
411  </InternalElement>
412  <InternalElement Name="Transport-2" ID="Transport-2">
413      <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-17" />
414      <InternalElement Name="Transport-2-B2MML-Document"
415          ID="Transport-2-B2MML-Document">
416          <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-17">
417              <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
418                  <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
419              </Attribute>
420              <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
```

```

421             <Value>./PPR-ProcessSegments.b2mml#Transport-2</Value>
422         </Attribute>
423     </ExternalInterface>
424     <RoleRequirements
425         RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
426   </InternalElement>
427   <InternalLink Name="T2_C2" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-2:PPR"
428     RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-2:PPR" />
429   <InternalLink Name="T2_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-2:PPR"
430     RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels-Instance:PPR" />
431   <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegment" />
432 </InternalElement>
433 <InternalElement Name="Assemble" ID="Assemble">
434   <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-18" />
435   <InternalElement Name="Assemble-B2MML-Document"
436     ID="Assemble-B2MML-Document">
437     <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-18">
438       <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
439         <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
440       </Attribute>
441       <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
442         <Value>./PPR-ProcessSegments.b2mml#Assemble</Value>
443       </Attribute>
444     </ExternalInterface>
445     <RoleRequirements
446       RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
447   </InternalElement>
448   <InternalLink Name="A_R" RefPartnerSideA="Assemble:PPR"
449     RefPartnerSideB="Robot:PPR" />
450   <InternalLink Name="A_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Assemble:PPR"
451     RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels-Instance:PPR" />
452   <InternalLink Name="A_W" RefPartnerSideA="Assemble:PPR"
453     RefPartnerSideB="Wheel-Instance:PPR" />
454   <InternalLink Name="A_CWW" RefPartnerSideA="Assemble:PPR"
455     RefPartnerSideB="Car-with-Wheel-Instance:PPR" />
456   <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegment" />
457 </InternalElement>
458 <InternalElement Name="Transport-3" ID="Transport-3">
459   <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-19" />
460   <InternalElement Name="Transport-3-B2MML-Document"
461     ID="Transport-3-B2MML-Document">
462     <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-19">
463       <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
464         <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
465       </Attribute>
466       <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
467         <Value>./PPR-ProcessSegments.b2mml#Transport-3</Value>
468       </Attribute>
469     </ExternalInterface>
470     <RoleRequirements
471       RefBaseRoleClassPath="AutomationMLB2MMLRoleClassLib/B2mmlData" />
472   </InternalElement>
473   <InternalLink Name="T3_C2" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-3:PPR"
474     RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-2:PPR" />
475   <InternalLink Name="T3_CWW" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-3:PPR"
476     RefPartnerSideB="Car-with-Wheel-Instance:PPR" />
477   <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegment" />
478 </InternalElement>
479   <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessStructure" />
480 </InternalElement>
481 </InstanceHierarchy>
482 <RoleClassLib Name="B2MML-PPR-RCL">
483   <Description>Modeling of IEC 62264 information.</Description>
484   <Version>1.0.0</Version>
485   <RoleClass Name="EquipmentClasses" RefBaseClassPath="ResourceStructure">
486     <RoleClass Name="Conveyer-Class" />

```

```
487      RefBaseClassPath=
488      "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/EquipmentClass">
489      <Description>
490          Conveyers of all kind belong to the Conveyer equipment class.
491      </Description>
492      <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
493          <Value>Conveyer-Class</Value>
494      </Attribute>
495      </RoleClass>
496      <RoleClass Name="Turntable-Class"
497          RefBaseClassPath=
498          "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/EquipmentClass">
499          <Description>
500              Turntables of all kind belong to the Turntable equipment class.
501          </Description>
502          <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
503              <Value>Turntable-Class</Value>
504          </Attribute>
505          </RoleClass>
506          <RoleClass Name="Robot-Class"
507              RefBaseClassPath=
508              "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/EquipmentModel/EquipmentClass">
509              <Description>
510                  Robots of all kind belong to the Robot equipment class.
511              </Description>
512              <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
513                  <Value>Robot-Class</Value>
514              </Attribute>
515              </RoleClass>
516          </RoleClass>
517          <RoleClass Name="MaterialClasses" RefBaseClassPath="ProductStructure">
518              <RoleClass Name="Car-without-Wheels-Class"
519                  RefBaseClassPath=
520                  "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialClass">
521                  <Description>
522                      Cars without wheels of all kind belong to the Car-without-Wheels material
523                      class.
524                  </Description>
525                  <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
526                      <Value>Car-without-Wheels-Class</Value>
527                  </Attribute>
528              </RoleClass>
529              <RoleClass Name="Wheel-Class"
530                  RefBaseClassPath=
531                  "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialClass">
532                  <Description>
533                      Wheels of all kind belong to the Wheel material class.
534                  </Description>
535                  <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
536                      <Value>Wheel-Class</Value>
537                  </Attribute>
538              </RoleClass>
539              <RoleClass Name="Car-with-Wheels-Class"
540                  RefBaseClassPath=
541                  "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialClass">
542                  <Description>
543                      Cars with wheels of all kind belong to the Car-with-Wheels material
544                      class.
545                  </Description>
546                  <Attribute Name="assemblyType" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
547                      <Value>Physical</Value>
548                  </Attribute>
549                  <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
550                      <Value>Permanent</Value>
551                  </Attribute>
552                  <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">
```

```
553             <Value>Car-with-Wheels-Class</Value>
554         </Attribute>
555     </RoleClass>
556   </RoleClass>
557 </RoleClassLib>
558 <SystemUnitClassLib Name="B2MML-PPR-SUC">
559   <Description>
560     Integration of IEC 62264 information by referencing B2MML documents.
561   </Description>
562   <Version>1.0.0</Version>
563   <SystemUnitClass Name="PhysicalAssetClasses">
564     <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="ResourceStructure" />
565     <SystemUnitClass Name="Short-Conveyer-PA-Class" ID="Short-Conveyer-PA-Class">
566       <Description>The short conveyer of Conveyer Manufacturer.</Description>
567       <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
568         <Value>Short-Conveyer-PA-Class</Value>
569       </Attribute>
570       <Attribute Name="manufacturer" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
571         <Value>Conveyer Manufacturer</Value>
572       </Attribute>
573       <InternalElement Name="Short-Conveyer-PA-Class-B2MML-Document"
574         ID="Short-Conveyer-PA-Class-B2MML-Document">
575         <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" ID="B2MML-07" RefBaseClassPath="EDR">
576           <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
577             <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
578           </Attribute>
579           <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
580             <Value>./PPR-PhysicalAssets.b2mml#Short-Conveyer-PA-Class</Value>
581           </Attribute>
582         </ExternalInterface>
583         <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2mmlData" />
584       </InternalElement>
585       <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="PhysicalAssetClass" />
586     </SystemUnitClass>
587     <SystemUnitClass Name="Long-Conveyer-PA-Class" ID="Long-Conveyer-PA-Class">
588       <Description>The long conveyer of Conveyer Manufacturer.</Description>
589       <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
590         <Value>Long-Conveyer-PA-Class</Value>
591       </Attribute>
592       <Attribute Name="manufacturer" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
593         <Value>Conveyer Manufacturer</Value>
594       </Attribute>
595       <InternalElement Name="Long-Conveyer-PA-Class-B2MML-Document"
596         ID="Long-Conveyer-PA-Class-B2MML-Document">
597         <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" ID="B2MML-04" RefBaseClassPath="EDR">
598           <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
599             <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
600           </Attribute>
601           <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
602             <Value>./PPR-PhysicalAssets.b2mml#Long-Conveyer-PA-Class</Value>
603           </Attribute>
604         </ExternalInterface>
605         <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2mmlData" />
606       </InternalElement>
607       <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="PhysicalAssetClass" />
608     </SystemUnitClass>
609     <SystemUnitClass Name="Turntable-PA-Class" ID="Turntable-PA-Class">
610       <Description>The high end turntable of Turntable Manufacturer.</Description>
611       <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
612         <Value>Turntable-PA-Class</Value>
613       </Attribute>
614       <Attribute Name="manufacturer" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
615         <Value>Turntable Manufacturer</Value>
616       </Attribute>
617       <InternalElement Name="Turntable-PA-Class-B2MML-Document"
618         ID="Turntable-PA-Class-B2MML-Document">
```

```

619      <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" ID="B2MML-05" RefBaseClassPath="EDR">
620        <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
621          <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
622        </Attribute>
623        <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
624          <Value>./PPR-PhysicalAssets.b2mml#Turntable-PA-Class</Value>
625        </Attribute>
626      </ExternalInterface>
627      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2mmlData" />
628    </InternalElement>
629    <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="PhysicalAssetClass" />
630  </SystemUnitClass>
631  <SystemUnitClass Name="Robot-PA-Class" ID="Robot-PA-Class">
632    <Description>The only robot of Robot Manufacturer.</Description>
633    <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
634      <Value>Robot-PA-Class</Value>
635    </Attribute>
636    <Attribute Name="manufacturer" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
637      <Value>Robot Manufacturer</Value>
638    </Attribute>
639    <InternalElement Name="Robot-PA-Class-B2MML-Document"
640      ID="Robot-PA-Class-B2MML-Document">
641      <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" ID="B2MML-06" RefBaseClassPath="EDR">
642        <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
643          <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
644        </Attribute>
645        <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
646          <Value>./PPR-PhysicalAssets.b2mml#Robot-PA-Class</Value>
647        </Attribute>
648      </ExternalInterface>
649      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2mmlData" />
650    </InternalElement>
651    <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="PhysicalAssetClass" />
652  </SystemUnitClass>
653</SystemUnitClass>
654 <SystemUnitClass Name="MaterialDefinitions">
655   <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="ProductStructure" />
656   <SystemUnitClass Name="Wheel" ID="Wheel">
657     <InternalElement Name="Wheel-B2MML-Document" ID="Wheel-B2MML-Document">
658       <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-01">
659         <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
660           <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
661         </Attribute>
662         <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
663           <Value>./PPR-Material.b2mml#Wheel</Value>
664         </Attribute>
665       </ExternalInterface>
666       <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2mmlData" />
667     </InternalElement>
668     <SupportedRoleClass
669       RefRoleClassPath="B2MML-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Wheel-Class" />
670     <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
671   </SystemUnitClass>
672   <SystemUnitClass Name="Car-without-Wheels" ID="Car-without-Wheels">
673     <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels-B2MML-Document"
674       ID="Car-without-Wheels-B2MML-Document">
675       <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-02">
676         <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
677           <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
678         </Attribute>
679         <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
680           <Value>./PPR-Material.b2mml#Car-without-Wheels</Value>
681         </Attribute>
682       </ExternalInterface>
683       <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2mmlData" />
684     </InternalElement>

```

```

685     <SupportedRoleClass
686         RefRoleClassPath=
687         "B2MML-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Car-without-Wheels-Class" />
688     <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
689   </SystemUnitClass>
690   <SystemUnitClass Name="Car-with-Wheels" ID="Car-with-Wheels">
691     <InternalElement Name="Car-with-Wheels-B2MML-Document"
692       ID="Car-with-Wheels-B2MML-Document">
693       <ExternalInterface Name="B2MML" RefBaseClassPath="EDR" ID="B2MML-03">
694         <Attribute Name="MIMETYPE" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
695           <Value>application/x.b2mml+xml</Value>
696         </Attribute>
697         <Attribute Name="refURI" AttributeDataType="xs:anyURI">
698           <Value>.//PPR-Material.b2mml#Car-with-Wheels</Value>
699         </Attribute>
700       </ExternalInterface>
701       <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="B2mmlData" />
702     </InternalElement>
703     <SupportedRoleClass
704       RefRoleClassPath="B2MML-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Car-with-Wheels-Class"
705       />
706     <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
707   </SystemUnitClass>
708 </SystemUnitClass>
709 </SystemUnitClassLib>

```

Listing 9 depicts the IEC 62264 equipment information encoded in B2MML. Equipment is one of two possible IEC 62264 counterparts of AML resources (the other one being physical assets). In order to list several pieces of equipment in one document, the root element EquipmentInformation is to be used. In this case, three equipment classes are specified: “Conveyer-Class”, “Turntable-Class”, and “Robot-Class”. Each of the classes specifies a list of equipment that is defined by this equipment class in a sequence of EquipmentID elements. Equipment elements in turn define through the EquipmentClassID element to which equipment class they belong to.

Listing 9: Contents of document PPR-Equipment.b2mml.

```

1  <EquipmentInformation xmlns="http://www.mesa.org/xml/B2MML-V0600">
2    <Equipment>
3      <ID>Conveyer-1</ID>
4      <Description>
5        Delivers cars without wheels from the product source to the turntable.
6      </Description>
7      <EquipmentLevel>
8        <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
9      </EquipmentLevel>
10     <EquipmentClassID>Conveyer-Class</EquipmentClassID>
11   </Equipment>
12   <Equipment>
13     <ID>Conveyer-2</ID>
14     <Description>
15       Delivers cars without wheels from the turntable to the product drain for
16       finished products.
17     </Description>
18     <EquipmentLevel>
19       <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
20     </EquipmentLevel>
21     <EquipmentClassID>Conveyer-Class</EquipmentClassID>
22   </Equipment>
23   <Equipment>
24     <ID>Turntable</ID>
25     <Description>
26       Turns cars without wheels either towards the product drain for unfinished
27       products or towards Conveyer2.
28     </Description>

```

```

29      <EquipmentLevel>
30          <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
31      </EquipmentLevel>
32      <EquipmentClassID>Turntable-Class</EquipmentClassID>
33  </Equipment>
34  <Equipment>
35      <ID>Robot</ID>
36      <Description>Assembles wheels to cars without wheels.</Description>
37      <EquipmentLevel>
38          <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
39      </EquipmentLevel>
40      <EquipmentClassID>Robot-Class</EquipmentClassID>
41  </Equipment>
42  <EquipmentClass>
43      <ID>Conveyer-Class</ID>
44      <Description>
45          Conveyers of all kind belong to the Conveyer equipment class.
46      </Description>
47      <EquipmentLevel>
48          <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
49      </EquipmentLevel>
50      <EquipmentID>Conveyer-1</EquipmentID>
51      <EquipmentID>Conveyer-2</EquipmentID>
52  </EquipmentClass>
53  <EquipmentClass>
54      <ID>Turntable-Class</ID>
55      <Description>
56          Turntables of all kind belong to the Turntable equipment class.
57      </Description>
58      <EquipmentLevel>
59          <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
60      </EquipmentLevel>
61      <EquipmentID>Turntable</EquipmentID>
62  </EquipmentClass>
63  <EquipmentClass>
64      <ID>Robot-Class</ID>
65      <Description>
66          Robots of all kind belong to the Robot equipment class.
67      </Description>
68      <EquipmentLevel>
69          <EquipmentElementLevel>WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
70      </EquipmentLevel>
71      <EquipmentID>Robot</EquipmentID>
72  </EquipmentClass>
73 </EquipmentInformation>

```

Listing 10 depicts the IEC 62264 physical asset information encoded in B2MML. Physical assets are one of two possible IEC 62264 counterparts of AML resources (the other one being equipment). In order to list several physical assets in one document, the root element PhysicalAssetModel is to be used. Here, four physical asset classes are defined: one for each equipment class presented in Listing 9 except for the Conveyer-Class, where two physical asset classes are defined, one for long conveyers, and one for short conveyers. The reason for that is the logics defined in IEC 62264: a physical asset class corresponds to a certain product model of a supplier. The four physical assets correspond to the required resources for the PPR example – in IEC 62264 physical assets correspond to a specific instance of a product model, i.e. something that yields a unique serial number.

Listing 10: Contents of document PPR-PhysicalAssets.b2mml.

```

1  <PhysicalAssetInformation xmlns="http://www.mesa.org/xml/B2MML-V0600">
2      <PhysicalAsset>
3          <ID>Conveyer-1-PA</ID>
4          <Description>
5              Delivers cars without wheels from the product source to the turntable.
6          </Description>

```

```
7      <PhysicalLocation>Area 1, Hall 1</PhysicalLocation>
8      <FixedAssetID>001</FixedAssetID>
9      <VendorID>CM12345</VendorID>
10     <EquipmentAssetMapping>
11        <EquipmentID>Conveyer-1</EquipmentID>
12        <PhysicalAssetID>Conveyer-1-PA</PhysicalAssetID>
13        <StartTime>2016-06-01</StartTime>
14    </EquipmentAssetMapping>
15    <PhysicalAssetClassID>Short-Conveyer-PA-Class</PhysicalAssetClassID>
16  </PhysicalAsset>
17  <PhysicalAsset>
18    <ID>Conveyer-2-PA</ID>
19    <Description>
20      Delivers cars without wheels from the turntable to the product drain for
21      finished products.
22  </Description>
23  <PhysicalLocation>Area 1, Hall 1</PhysicalLocation>
24  <FixedAssetID>002</FixedAssetID>
25  <VendorID>CM54321</VendorID>
26  <EquipmentAssetMapping>
27    <EquipmentID>Conveyer-2</EquipmentID>
28    <PhysicalAssetID>Conveyer-2-PA</PhysicalAssetID>
29    <StartTime>2016-06-02</StartTime>
30  </EquipmentAssetMapping>
31  <PhysicalAssetClassID>Long- Conveyer-PA-Class</PhysicalAssetClassID>
32  </PhysicalAsset>
33  <PhysicalAsset>
34    <ID>Turtable-PA</ID>
35    <Description>
36      Turns cars without wheels either towards the product drain for unfinished
37      products or towards Conveyor 2.
38  </Description>
39  <PhysicalLocation>Area 1, Hall 1</PhysicalLocation>
40  <FixedAssetID>003</FixedAssetID>
41  <VendorID>TM123</VendorID>
42  <EquipmentAssetMapping>
43    <EquipmentID>Turtable</EquipmentID>
44    <PhysicalAssetID>Turtable-PA</PhysicalAssetID>
45    <StartTime>2016-06-03</StartTime>
46  </EquipmentAssetMapping>
47  <PhysicalAssetClassID>Turtable-PA-Class</PhysicalAssetClassID>
48  </PhysicalAsset>
49  <PhysicalAsset>
50    <ID>Robot-PA</ID>
51    <Description>Assembles wheels to cars without wheels.</Description>
52  <PhysicalLocation>Area 1, Hall 1</PhysicalLocation>
53  <FixedAssetID>004</FixedAssetID>
54  <VendorID>RM321</VendorID>
55  <EquipmentAssetMapping>
56    <EquipmentID>Robot</EquipmentID>
57    <PhysicalAssetID>Robot-PA</PhysicalAssetID>
58    <StartTime>2016-06-04</StartTime>
59  </EquipmentAssetMapping>
60  <PhysicalAssetClassID>Robot-PA-Class</PhysicalAssetClassID>
61  </PhysicalAsset>
62  <PhysicalAssetClass>
63    <ID>Short-Conveyer-PA-Class</ID>
64    <Description>The short conveyer of Conveyer Manufacturer.</Description>
65    <Manufacturer>Conveyer Manufacturer</Manufacturer>
66    <PhysicalAssetID>Conveyer-1-PA</PhysicalAssetID>
67  </PhysicalAssetClass>
68  <PhysicalAssetClass>
69    <ID>Long-Conveyer-PA-Class</ID>
70    <Description>The long conveyer of Conveyer Manufacturer.</Description>
71    <Manufacturer>Conveyer Manufacturer</Manufacturer>
72    <PhysicalAssetID>Conveyer-2-PA</PhysicalAssetID>
```

```

73 </PhysicalAssetClass>
74 <PhysicalAssetClass>
75   <ID>Turntable-PA-Class</ID>
76   <Description>The high end turntable of Turntable Manufacturer.</Description>
77   <Manufacturer>Turntable Manufacturer</Manufacturer>
78   <PhysicalAssetID>Turntable-PA</PhysicalAssetID>
79 </PhysicalAssetClass>
80 <PhysicalAssetClass>
81   <ID>Robot-PA-Class</ID>
82   <Description>The only robot of Robot Manufacturer.</Description>
83   <Manufacturer>Robot Manufacturer</Manufacturer>
84   <PhysicalAssetID>Robot-PA</PhysicalAssetID>
85 </PhysicalAssetClass>
86 </PhysicalAssetInformation>

```

Listing 11 depicts the IEC 62264 material information encoded in B2MML. Material is the IEC 62264 equivalent of AML products. In order to list several types of material in one document, the root element MaterialInformation is to be used. In this example three material classes and three material definitions are defined: cars without wheels, wheels, and cars with wheels. Material may represent an assembly, which can be defined on material class and/or material definition level. In this case, it is defined on both levels, stating that a car with wheels is a physical (the other option would be logical) and permanent (that is, it is not teared apart during production again) assembly of (i) a car without wheels and (ii) wheels.

Listing 11: Contents of document PPR-Material.b2mml.

```

1 <MaterialInformation xmlns="http://www.mesa.org/xml/B2MML-V0600">
2   <MaterialClass>
3     <ID>Car-without-Wheels-Class</ID>
4     <Description>
5       Cars without Wheels of all kind belong to the Car-without-Wheels material
6       class.
7     </Description>
8     <MaterialDefinitionID>Car-without-Wheels</MaterialDefinitionID>
9   </MaterialClass>
10  <MaterialClass>
11    <ID>Wheel-Class</ID>
12    <Description>
13      Wheels of all kind belong to the Wheel material class.
14    </Description>
15    <MaterialDefinitionID>Wheel</MaterialDefinitionID>
16  </MaterialClass>
17  <MaterialClass>
18    <ID>Car-with-Wheels-Class</ID>
19    <Description>
20      Cars with Wheels of all kind belong to the Car-with-Wheels material class.
21    </Description>
22    <MaterialDefinitionID>Car-with-Wheels</MaterialDefinitionID>
23    <AssemblyClassID>Car-without-Wheels-Class</AssemblyClassID>
24    <AssemblyClassID>Wheel-Class</AssemblyClassID>
25    <AssemblyType>Physical</AssemblyType>
26    <AssemblyRelationship>Permanent</AssemblyRelationship>
27  </MaterialClass>
28  <MaterialDefinition>
29    <ID>Car-without-Wheels</ID>
30    <Description>A car that has no wheels attached.</Description>
31    <MaterialClassID>Car-without-Wheels-Class</MaterialClassID>
32  </MaterialDefinition>
33  <MaterialDefinition>
34    <ID>Wheel</ID>
35    <Description>A wheel that is to be attached to a car.</Description>
36    <MaterialClassID>Wheel-Class</MaterialClassID>
37  </MaterialDefinition>
38  <MaterialDefinition>
39    <ID>Car-with-Wheels</ID>

```

```

40      <Description>A car with wheels attached.</Description>
41      <MaterialClassID>Car-with-Wheels-Class</MaterialClassID>
42      <AssemblyDefinitionID>Car-without-Wheels</AssemblyDefinitionID>
43      <AssemblyDefinitionID>Wheel</AssemblyDefinitionID>
44      <AssemblyType>Physical</AssemblyType>
45      <AssemblyRelationship>Permanent</AssemblyRelationship>
46    </MaterialDefinition>
47  </MaterialInformation>

```

Listing 12 depicts the IEC 62264 process segment information encoded in B2MML. Process segments are the IEC 62264 equivalent of AML processes. In order to list several process segments in one document, the root element `ProcessSegmentInformation` is to be used. In this example five process segments are defined, corresponding to the processes of the PPR-setup. From the B2MML code given in Listing 12 a lot of information can be extracted that might be of use in the context of AutomationML. This information could be used to enrich the referencing AML document (and thus duplicate information, which might resemble a problem with regards to document maintenance), or it could be used by tools that understand AML and B2MML to infer knowledge for advanced tasks (such as simulation). The information provided in Listing 12 includes:

1. the process itself is assigned to an equipment level (e.g. Transport-1 takes place on the work cell level),
2. the duration of a process (e.g. Transport-1 takes 30 seconds: "PT30S"),
3. the equipment and material required for the process (this information should correspond to information encoded in AML using the PPR method),
4. a quantity for the involved equipment (e.g. 30 machine seconds per piece for Conveyer-1),
5. a quantity for the required material (e.g. 1 unit of cars without wheels for Transport-1),
6. the role of the involved material: is it consumed, produced, or moved (e.g. in the Assemble process segment, the materials Wheel and Car-without-Wheels are consumed, while the material Car-with-Wheels is produced)? This kind of information is not commonly defined in the PPR method,
7. segment dependencies define how two process segments are depending on each other (e.g. "Start Turn after Transport-1 end", which resembles a time constraint that the turn process must not start earlier than after Transport-1 has finished).

Listing 12: Contents of document PPR-ProcessSegments.b2mml.

```

1  <ProcessSegmentInformation xmlns="http://www.mesa.org/xml/B2MML-V0600">
2    <ProcessSegment>
3      <ID>Transport-1</ID>
4      <Description>
5        Transport 1 is accomplished with Conveyer 1. Cars without wheels are
6        delivered from the product source to the turntable.
7      </Description>
8      <OperationsType>Production</OperationsType>
9      <HierarchyScope>
10        <EquipmentElementLevel OtherValue="">WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
11      </HierarchyScope>
12      <Duration>PT30S</Duration>
13      <EquipmentSegmentSpecification>
14        <EquipmentID>Conveyer-1</EquipmentID>
15        <Description>
16          Conveyer needed for transporting cars without wheels to the turntable.
17        </Description>
18        <EquipmentUse>Material Movement</EquipmentUse>
19        <Quantity>
20          <QuantityString>30</QuantityString>
21          <UnitOfMeasure>Machine Seconds / Piece</UnitOfMeasure>
22        </Quantity>
23      </EquipmentSegmentSpecification>
24      <MaterialSegmentSpecification>
25        <MaterialDefinitionID>Car-without-Wheels</MaterialDefinitionID>
26        <Description>
27          The cars without wheels that are to be transported.

```

```
28      </Description>
29      <MaterialUse>Material Moved</MaterialUse>
30      <Quantity>
31          <QuantityString>1</QuantityString>
32          <UnitOfMeasure>Units</UnitOfMeasure>
33      </Quantity>
34      </MaterialSegmentSpecification>
35  </ProcessSegment>
36  <ProcessSegment>
37      <ID>Transport-2</ID>
38      <Description>
39          Transport 2 is accomplished with Conveyer 2. Cars without wheels are
40          delivered from the turntable to the robot.
41      </Description>
42      <OperationsType>Production</OperationsType>
43      <HierarchyScope>
44          <EquipmentElementLevel OtherValue="">WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
45      </HierarchyScope>
46      <Duration>PT10S</Duration>
47      <EquipmentSegmentSpecification>
48          <EquipmentID>Conveyer-2</EquipmentID>
49          <Description>
50              Conveyer needed for transporting cars without wheels from the turntable
51              to the robot.
52          </Description>
53          <EquipmentUse>Material Movement</EquipmentUse>
54          <Quantity>
55              <QuantityString>10</QuantityString>
56              <UnitOfMeasure>Machine Seconds / Piece</UnitOfMeasure>
57          </Quantity>
58      </EquipmentSegmentSpecification>
59      <MaterialSegmentSpecification>
60          <MaterialDefinitionID>Car-without-Wheels</MaterialDefinitionID>
61          <Description>
62              The cars without wheels that are to be transported.
63          </Description>
64          <MaterialUse>Material Moved</MaterialUse>
65          <Quantity>
66              <QuantityString>1</QuantityString>
67              <UnitOfMeasure>Units</UnitOfMeasure>
68          </Quantity>
69      </MaterialSegmentSpecification>
70      <SegmentDependency>
71          <ID>Transport-2-after-Turn</ID>
72          <Description>Transport 2 after Turn</Description>
73          <Dependency>Start Transport 2 after Turn end</Dependency>
74          <ProcessSegmentID>Turn</ProcessSegmentID>
75      </SegmentDependency>
76  </ProcessSegment>
77  <ProcessSegment>
78      <ID>Transport-3</ID>
79      <Description>
80          Transport 3 is accomplished with Conveyer 2. Cars with wheels are delivered
81          from the robot to the product drain for finished products.
82      </Description>
83      <OperationsType>Production</OperationsType>
84      <HierarchyScope>
85          <EquipmentElementLevel OtherValue="">WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
86      </HierarchyScope>
87      <Duration>PT10S</Duration>
88      <EquipmentSegmentSpecification>
89          <EquipmentID>Conveyer-2</EquipmentID>
90          <Description>
91              Conveyer needed for transporting cars with wheels from the robot to the
92              product drain.
93          </Description>
```

```
94      <EquipmentUse>Material Movement</EquipmentUse>
95      <Quantity>
96          <QuantityString>10</QuantityString>
97          <UnitOfMeasure>Machine Seconds / Piece</UnitOfMeasure>
98      </Quantity>
99      </EquipmentSegmentSpecification>
100     <MaterialSegmentSpecification>
101         <MaterialDefinitionID>Car-with-Wheels</MaterialDefinitionID>
102         <Description>The cars with wheels that are to be transported.</Description>
103         <MaterialUse>Material Moved</MaterialUse>
104         <Quantity>
105             <QuantityString>1</QuantityString>
106             <UnitOfMeasure>Units</UnitOfMeasure>
107         </Quantity>
108     </MaterialSegmentSpecification>
109     <SegmentDependency>
110         <ID>Transport-3-after-Assemble</ID>
111         <Description>Transport 3 after Assemble</Description>
112         <Dependency>Start Transport 3 after Assemble end</Dependency>
113         <ProcessSegmentID>Assemble</ProcessSegmentID>
114     </SegmentDependency>
115 </ProcessSegment>
116 <ProcessSegment>
117     <ID>Turn</ID>
118     <Description>
119         Turning is accomplished by the turntable that might hold a car without
120         wheels. Cars without wheels that should be assembled are turned
121         towards Conveyer 2, the ones that should not be further processed are
122         turned towards the product drain for unfinished products.
123     </Description>
124     <OperationsType>Production</OperationsType>
125     <HierarchyScope>
126         <EquipmentElementLevel OtherValue="">WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
127     </HierarchyScope>
128     <Duration>PT15S</Duration>
129     <EquipmentSegmentSpecification>
130         <EquipmentID>Turntable</EquipmentID>
131         <Description>
132             Turntable needed for turning cars to either Conveyer 2 or to the product
133             drain for unfinished products.
134         </Description>
135         <EquipmentUse>Material Movement</EquipmentUse>
136         <Quantity>
137             <QuantityString>15</QuantityString>
138             <UnitOfMeasure>Machine Seconds / Piece</UnitOfMeasure>
139         </Quantity>
140     </EquipmentSegmentSpecification>
141     <MaterialSegmentSpecification>
142         <MaterialDefinitionID>Car-without-Wheels</MaterialDefinitionID>
143         <Description>The cars without wheels that are to be turned.</Description>
144         <MaterialUse>Material Moved</MaterialUse>
145         <Quantity>
146             <QuantityString>1</QuantityString>
147             <UnitOfMeasure>Units</UnitOfMeasure>
148         </Quantity>
149     </MaterialSegmentSpecification>
150     <SegmentDependency>
151         <ID>Turn-after-Transport-1</ID>
152         <Description>Turn after Transport 1</Description>
153         <Dependency>Start Turn after Transport 1 end</Dependency>
154         <ProcessSegmentID>Transport-1</ProcessSegmentID>
155     </SegmentDependency>
156 </ProcessSegment>
157 <ProcessSegment>
158     <ID>Assemble</ID>
159     <Description>
```

```
160      Assembling is accomplished by the robot, which attaches wheels to cars
161      without wheels in order to transform them into cars with wheels.
162    </Description>
163    <OperationsType>Production</OperationsType>
164    <HierarchyScope>
165      <EquipmentElementLevel OtherValue="">WorkCell</EquipmentElementLevel>
166    </HierarchyScope>
167    <Duration>PT2M</Duration>
168    <EquipmentSegmentSpecification>
169      <EquipmentID>Robot</EquipmentID>
170      <Description>
171        Robot needed for attaching wheels to cars without wheels.
172      </Description>
173      <EquipmentUse>Attach Wheels</EquipmentUse>
174      <Quantity>
175        <QuantityString>2</QuantityString>
176        <UnitOfMeasure>Machine Minutes / Piece</UnitOfMeasure>
177      </Quantity>
178    </EquipmentSegmentSpecification>
179    <MaterialSegmentSpecification>
180      <MaterialDefinitionID>Car-without-Wheels</MaterialDefinitionID>
181      <Description>The cars without wheels that are to be refined.</Description>
182      <MaterialUse>Material Consumed</MaterialUse>
183      <Quantity>
184        <QuantityString>1</QuantityString>
185        <UnitOfMeasure>Units</UnitOfMeasure>
186      </Quantity>
187    </MaterialSegmentSpecification>
188    <MaterialSegmentSpecification>
189      <MaterialDefinitionID>Wheel</MaterialDefinitionID>
190      <Description>The wheels that are to be attached.</Description>
191      <MaterialUse>Material Consumed</MaterialUse>
192      <Quantity>
193        <QuantityString>4</QuantityString>
194        <UnitOfMeasure>Units</UnitOfMeasure>
195      </Quantity>
196    </MaterialSegmentSpecification>
197    <MaterialSegmentSpecification>
198      <MaterialDefinitionID>Car-with-Wheels</MaterialDefinitionID>
199      <Description>The cars with wheels that are produced.</Description>
200      <MaterialUse>Material Produced</MaterialUse>
201      <Quantity>
202        <QuantityString>1</QuantityString>
203        <UnitOfMeasure>Units</UnitOfMeasure>
204      </Quantity>
205    </MaterialSegmentSpecification>
206    <SegmentDependency>
207      <ID>Assemble-after-Transport-2</ID>
208      <Description>Assemble after Transport 2</Description>
209      <Dependency>Start Assemble after Transport 2 end</Dependency>
210      <ProcessSegmentID>Transport-2</ProcessSegmentID>
211    </SegmentDependency>
212  </ProcessSegment>
213 </ProcessSegmentInformation>
```

Appendix E Example for Modeling IEC 62264 Information within AML Documents

Listing 13 resembles the InstanceHierarchy, RoleClassLib and SystemUnitClassLib of the AutomationML document for the IEC 62264 PPR example, again based on the application scenario depicted in Figures 25 and 26. Instead of referencing various elements from different B2MML documents, it models IEC 62264 information within AML, by making use of the AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib. Again, the substitutions as depicted in Table 135 have been conducted.

There are no references to external B2MML documents modeled here, but B2MML documents could be partly generated from the information stored in this AML document.

Listing 13: InstanceHierarchy, SystemUnitClassLib, and RoleClassLib excerpt of document Example-04-IEC62264-PPR.aml.

```

1 <InstanceHierarchy Name="IEC62264-PPR-IH">
2   <Description>
3     Example for modeling IEC 62264 elements without reference to B2MML documents.
4     The IEC 62264 logic is modeled by means of AML concepts. Additionally,
5     AML objects are aligned with PPR roles.
6   </Description>
7   <Version>1.0.0</Version>
8   <InternalElement Name="Equipment" ID="Equipment">
9     <InternalElement Name="Site-1" ID="Site-1">
10    <InternalElement Name="Hall-1" ID="Hall-1">
11      <InternalElement Name="Production-Line-1" ID="Production-Line-1">
12        <InternalElement Name="Robot" ID="Robot">
13          <Description>
14            Assembles wheels to cars without wheels.
15          </Description>
16          <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
17            <Value>Robot</Value>
18          </Attribute>
19          <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector"
20            ID="PPR-14" />
21          <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-01" />
22          <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-01">
23            <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
24              <Description>
25                An identification of the specific equipment asset
26                mapping.
27              </Description>
28            </Attribute>
29            <Attribute Name="description" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
30              <Description>
31                Additional information about the mapping element.
32              </Description>
33            </Attribute>
34            <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
35              <Description>
36                The starting time of the association.
37              </Description>
38            </Attribute>
39            <Attribute Name="endTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
40              <Description>
41                The ending time of the association.
42              </Description>
43            </Attribute>
44          </ExternalInterface>
45          <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
46          <SupportedRoleClass
47            RefRoleClassPath=
48              "IEC62264-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Robot-Class" />
49          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="Equipment" />

```

```
50      </InternalElement>
51  <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-2" ID="Conveyer-2">
52      <Description>
53          Delivers cars without wheels from the turntable to the product
54          drain for finished products.
55      </Description>
56      <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
57          <Value>Conveyer-2</Value>
58      </Attribute>
59      <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector"
60          ID="PPR-13" />
61      <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-02" />
62      <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-02">
63          <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
64              <Description>
65                  An identification of the specific equipment asset
66                  mapping.
67              </Description>
68          </Attribute>
69          <Attribute Name="description" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
70              <Description>
71                  Additional information about the mapping element.
72              </Description>
73          </Attribute>
74          <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
75              <Description>
76                  The starting time of the association.
77              </Description>
78          </Attribute>
79          <Attribute Name="endTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
80              <Description>
81                  The ending time of the association.
82              </Description>
83          </Attribute>
84      </ExternalInterface>
85      <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
86      <SupportedRoleClass
87          RefRoleClassPath=
88          "IEC62264-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Conveyer-Class" />
89          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="Equipment" />
90      </InternalElement>
91  <InternalElement Name="Turntable" ID="Turntable">
92      <Description>
93          Turns cars without wheels either towards the product drain for
94          unfinished products or towards Conveyer-2.
95      </Description>
96      <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
97          <Value>Turntable</Value>
98      </Attribute>
99      <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector"
100         ID="PPR-12" />
101     <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-03" />
102     <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-03">
103         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
104             <Description>
105                 An identification of the specific equipment asset
106                 mapping.
107             </Description>
108         </Attribute>
109         <Attribute Name="description" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
110             <Description>
111                 Additional information about the mapping element.
112             </Description>
113         </Attribute>
114         <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
115             <Description>
```

```
116          The starting time of the association.  
117      
```

```
118      
```

```
119      <Attribute Name="endTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">  
120          <Description>  
121              The ending time of the association.  
122          
```

```
123      
```

```
124      </Attribute>  
125      </ExternalInterface>  
126      <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClass Path="WorkCell" />  
127      <SupportedRoleClass  
128          RefRoleClass Path=  
129              "IEC62264-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Turtable-Class" />  
130          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClass Path="Equipment" />  
131      
```

```
132      <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-1" ID="Conveyer-1">  
133          <Description>  
134              Delivers cars without wheels from the product source to the  
135              turntable.  
136          
```

```
137          <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">  
138              <Value>Conveyer-1</Value>  
139          
```

```
140          <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClass Path="PPRConnector"  
141              ID="PPR-11" />  
142          <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClass Path="RC" ID="RC-04" />  
143          <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClass Path="EAC" ID="EAC-04">  
144              <Attribute Name="id" Attribute DataType="xs:string">  
145                  <Description>  
146                      An identification of the specific equipment asset  
147                      mapping.  
148                  
```

```
149                  <Attribute Name="description" Attribute DataType="xs:string">  
150                      <Description>  
151                          Additional information about the mapping element.  
152                      
```

```
153                      <Attribute Name="startTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">  
154                          <Description>  
155                              The starting time of the association.  
156                          
```

```
157                          <Attribute Name="endTime" Attribute DataType="xs:dateTime">  
158                              <Description>  
159                                  The ending time of the association.  
160                              
```

```
161                          <Attribute>  
162                              <Description>  
163                                  <Attribute>  
164                                      <ExternalInterface>  
165                                          <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClass Path="WorkCell" />  
166                                          <SupportedRoleClass  
167                                              RefRoleClass Path=  
168                                              "IEC62264-PPR-RCL/EquipmentClasses/Conveyer-Class" />  
169                                              <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClass Path="Equipment" />  
170                                              
```

```
171                                              <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClass Path="Equipment" />  
172                                              <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClass Path="ProductionLine" />  
173                                              
```

```
174                                              <InternalElement>  
175                                              <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClass Path="Equipment" />  
176                                              <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClass Path="Area" />  
177                                              
```

```
178                                              <InternalElement>  
179                                              <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClass Path="Equipment" />  
180                                              <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClass Path="Site" />  
181                                              
```

```
182 <InternalElement Name="PhysicalAssets" ID="PhysicalAssets">
183   <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-1-PA" ID="Conveyer-1-PA"
184     RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
185     "IEC62264-PPR-SUC/PhysicalAssetClasses/Short-Conveyer-PA-Class">
186     <Description>
187       Delivers cars without wheels from the product source to the turntable.
188     </Description>
189     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
190       <Value>Conveyer-1-PA</Value>
191     </Attribute>
192     <Attribute Name="fixedAssetId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
193       <Value>001</Value>
194     </Attribute>
195     <Attribute Name="vendorId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
196       <Value>CM12345</Value>
197     </Attribute>
198     <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-05" />
199     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="PhysicalAsset" />
200   </InternalElement>
201   <InternalElement Name="Turntable-PA" ID="Turntable-PA"
202     RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
203     "IEC62264-PPR-SUC/PhysicalAssetClasses/Turntable-PA-Class">
204     <Description>
205       Turns cars without wheels either towards the product drain for
206       unfinished products or towards Conveyor-2.
207     </Description>
208     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
209       <Value>Turntable-PA</Value>
210     </Attribute>
211     <Attribute Name="fixedAssetId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
212       <Value>003</Value>
213     </Attribute>
214     <Attribute Name="vendorId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
215       <Value>TM123</Value>
216     </Attribute>
217     <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-06" />
218     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="PhysicalAsset" />
219   </InternalElement>
220   <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-2-PA" ID="Conveyer-2-PA"
221     RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
222     "IEC62264-PPR-SUC/PhysicalAssetClasses/Long-Conveyer-PA-Class">
223     <Description>
224       Delivers cars without wheels from the turntable to the product drain
225       for finished products.
226     </Description>
227     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
228       <Value>Conveyer-2-PA</Value>
229     </Attribute>
230     <Attribute Name="fixedAssetId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
231       <Value>002</Value>
232     </Attribute>
233     <Attribute Name="vendorId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
234       <Value>CM54321</Value>
235     </Attribute>
236     <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-07" />
237     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="PhysicalAsset" />
238   </InternalElement>
239   <InternalElement Name="Robot-PA" ID="Robot-PA"
240     RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
241     "IEC62264-PPR-SUC/PhysicalAssetClasses/Robot-PA-Class">
242     <Description>Assembles wheels to cars without wheels.</Description>
243     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
244       <Value>Robot-PA</Value>
245     </Attribute>
246     <Attribute Name="fixedAssetId" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
247       <Value>004</Value>
```

```
248      </Attribute>
249      <Attribute Name="vendorID" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
250          <Value>RM321</Value>
251      </Attribute>
252      <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-08" />
253          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="PhysicalAsset" />
254      </InternalElement>
255      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ResourceStructure" />
256  </InternalElement>
257  <InternalElement Name="MaterialDefinitions" ID="MaterialDefinitions">
258      <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels" ID="Car-without-Wheels"
259          RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
260          "IEC62264-PPR-SUC/MaterialDefinitions/Car-without-Wheels">
261          <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" ID="PPR-20" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector"
262              />
263          <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-05" />
264          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
265      </InternalElement>
266      <InternalElement Name="Wheel" ID="Wheel"
267          RefBaseSystemUnitPath="IEC62264-PPR-SUC/MaterialDefinitions/Wheel">
268          <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" ID="PPR-21" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector"
269              />
270          <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-06" />
271          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
272      </InternalElement>
273      <InternalElement Name="Car-with-Wheels" ID="Car-with-Wheels"
274          RefBaseSystemUnitPath=
275          "IEC62264-PPR-SUC/MaterialDefinitions/Car-with-Wheels">
276          <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" ID="PPR-22" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector"
277              />
278          <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-07" />
279          <InternalElement Name="Assembly" ID="Assembly-01">
280              <InternalElement Name="Wheel" ID="Wheel-01"
281                  RefBaseSystemUnitPath="Wheel"></InternalElement>
282              <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels" ID="Car-without-Wheels-01"
283                  RefBaseSystemUnitPath="Car-without-Wheels"></InternalElement>
284              <RoleRequirements
285                  RefBaseRoleClassPath=
286                  "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialAssembly"
287                  />
288          </InternalElement>
289          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
290      </InternalElement>
291      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProductStructure" />
292  </InternalElement>
293  <InternalElement Name="MaterialClasses" ID="MaterialClasses">
294      <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels-Class"
295          ID="Car-without-Wheels-Class">
296          <RoleRequirements
297              RefBaseRoleClassPath=
298              "IEC62264-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Car-without-Wheels-Class" />
299      </InternalElement>
300      <InternalElement Name="Wheel-Class" ID="Wheel-Class-02">
301          <RoleRequirements
302              RefBaseRoleClassPath="IEC62264-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Wheel-Class"
303              />
304      </InternalElement>
305      <InternalElement Name="Car-with-Wheels-Class" ID="Car-with-Wheels-Class">
306          <InternalElement Name="Assembly" ID="Assembly">
307              <InternalElement Name="Wheel-Class" ID="Wheel-Class-01"
308                  RefBaseSystemUnitPath="Wheel-Class-02"></InternalElement>
309              <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels-Class"
310                  ID="Car-without-Wheels-Class-01"
311                  RefBaseSystemUnitPath="Car-without-Wheels-Class">
312                  /</InternalElement>
313          <RoleRequirements
```

```
314             RefBaseRoleClassPath=
315                 "AutomationMLIEC62264RoleClassLib/MaterialModel/MaterialAssembly"
316                 />
317         </InternalElement>
318         <RoleRequirements
319             RefBaseRoleClassPath=
320                 "IEC62264-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Car-with-Wheels-Class" />
321     </InternalElement>
322     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProductStructure" />
323 </InternalElement>
324 <InternalElement Name="ProcessSegments" ID="ProcessSegments">
325     <InternalElement Name="Transport-1" ID="Transport-1">
326         <Description>
327             Transport-1 is accomplished with Conveyer-1. Cars without wheels are
328             delivered from the product source to the turntable.
329         </Description>
330         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
331             <Value>Transport-1</Value>
332         </Attribute>
333         <Attribute Name="operationsType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
334             <Value>Production</Value>
335         </Attribute>
336         <Attribute Name="duration" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
337             <Value>30</Value>
338         </Attribute>
339         <Attribute Name="durationUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
340             <Value>seconds</Value>
341         </Attribute>
342         <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-15">
343             />
344         <ExternalInterface Name="DC" RefBaseClassPath="DC" ID="DC-01" />
345         <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-1-Specification"
346             ID="Conveyer-1-Specification">
347             <Description>
348                 Conveyer needed for transporting cars without wheels to the
349                 turntable.
350             </Description>
351             <Attribute Name="equipmentUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
352                 <Value>Material Movement</Value>
353             </Attribute>
354             <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
355                 <Value>30</Value>
356             </Attribute>
357             <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
358                 <Value>machine seconds / piece</Value>
359             </Attribute>
360             <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-08" />
361             <InternalLink Name="t1_c1"
362                 RefPartnerSideA="Conveyer-1-Specification:RC"
363                 RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-1:RC" />
364             <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="EquipmentSegmentSpecification"
365                 />
366         </InternalElement>
367         <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels-Specification"
368             ID="Car-without-Wheels-Specification">
369             <Description>
370                 The cars without wheels that are to be transported.
371             </Description>
372             <Attribute Name="materialUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
373                 <Value>Material Moved</Value>
374             </Attribute>
375             <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
376                 <Value>1</Value>
377             </Attribute>
378             <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
379                 <Value>units</Value>
```

```

380      </Attribute>
381      <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-09" />
382      <InternalLink Name="t1_cwow"
383          RefPartnerSideA="Car-without-Wheels-Specification:RC"
384          RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels:RC" />
385      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialSegmentSpecification"
386          />
387  </InternalElement>
388  <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
389  <InternalLink Name="T1_C1" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-1:PPR"
390      RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-1:PPR" />
391  <InternalLink Name="T1_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-1:PPR"
392      RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels:PPR" />
393  <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegment" />
394 </InternalElement>
395 <InternalElement Name="Turn" ID="Turn">
396     <Description>
397         Turning is accomplished by the turntable that might hold a
398         Car-without-Wheels. Cars without wheels that should be assembled
399         are turned towards Conveyer-2, the ones that should not be
400         further processed are turned towards the product drain for
401         unfinished products.
402     </Description>
403     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
404         <Value>Turn</Value>
405     </Attribute>
406     <Attribute Name="operationsType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
407         <Value>Production</Value>
408     </Attribute>
409     <Attribute Name="duration" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
410         <Value>15</Value>
411     </Attribute>
412     <Attribute Name="durationUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
413         <Value>seconds</Value>
414     </Attribute>
415     <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-16"
416         />
417     <ExternalInterface Name="DC" RefBaseClassPath="DC" ID="DC-02" />
418     <InternalElement Name="Turntable-Specification"
419         ID="Turntable-Specification">
420         <Description>
421             Turntable needed for turning cars to either Conveyer-2 or to the
422             product drain for unfinished products.
423         </Description>
424         <Attribute Name="equipmentUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
425             <Value>Material Movement</Value>
426         </Attribute>
427         <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
428             <Value>15</Value>
429         </Attribute>
430         <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
431             <Value>machine seconds / piece</Value>
432         </Attribute>
433         <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-10" />
434         <InternalLink Name="t_tt" RefPartnerSideA="Turntable-Specification:RC"
435             RefPartnerSideB="Turntable:RC" />
436         <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="EquipmentSegmentSpecification"
437             />
438     </InternalElement>
439     <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels-Specification"
440         ID="Car-without-Wheels-Specification">
441         <Description>
442             The cars without wheels that are to be turned.
443         </Description>
444         <Attribute Name="materialUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
445             <Value>Material Moved</Value>

```

```
446      </Attribute>
447      <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
448          <Value>1</Value>
449      </Attribute>
450      <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
451          <Value>units</Value>
452      </Attribute>
453      <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-11" />
454      <InternalLink Name="t_cwow"
455          RefPartnerSideA="Car-without-Wheels-Specification:RC"
456          RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels:RC" />
457      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialSegmentSpecification"
458          />
459  </InternalElement>
460  <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
461  <InternalLink Name="T_TT" RefPartnerSideA="Turn:PPR"
462      RefPartnerSideB="Turntable:PPR" />
463  <InternalLink Name="T_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Turn:PPR"
464      RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels:PPR" />
465  <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegment" />
466 </InternalElement>
467 <InternalElement Name="Transport-2" ID="Transport-2">
468      <Description>
469          Transport-2 is accomplished with Conveyer-2. Cars without wheels are
470          delivered from the turntable to the robot.
471      </Description>
472      <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
473          <Value>Transport-2</Value>
474      </Attribute>
475      <Attribute Name="operationsType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
476          <Value>Production</Value>
477      </Attribute>
478      <Attribute Name="duration" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
479          <Value>10</Value>
480      </Attribute>
481      <Attribute Name="durationUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
482          <Value>seconds</Value>
483      </Attribute>
484      <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-17"
485          />
486      <ExternalInterface Name="DC" RefBaseClassPath="DC" ID="DC-03" />
487      <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-2-Specification"
488          ID="Transport-2-Specification">
489          <Description>
490              Conveyer needed for transporting cars without wheels from the
491              turntable to the robot.
492          </Description>
493          <Attribute Name="equipmentUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
494              <Value>Material Movement</Value>
495          </Attribute>
496          <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
497              <Value>10</Value>
498          </Attribute>
499          <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
500              <Value>machine seconds / piece</Value>
501          </Attribute>
502          <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-12" />
503          <InternalLink Name="t2_c2"
504              RefPartnerSideA="Transport-2-Specification:RC"
505              RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-2:RC" />
506          <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="EquipmentSegmentSpecification"
507              />
508      </InternalElement>
509      <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels-Specification"
510          ID="Car-without-Wheels-Specification">
511          <Description>
```

```

512      The cars without wheels that are to be transported.
513  
```

`</Description>
<Attribute Name="materialUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
 <Value>Material Moved</Value>
</Attribute>
<Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
 <Value>1</Value>
</Attribute>
<Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
 <Value>units</Value>
</Attribute>
<ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-13" />
<InternalLink Name="t2_cwow"
 RefPartnerSideA="Car-without-Wheels-Specification:RC"
 RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels:RC" />
<RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialSegmentSpecification"
 />
</InternalElement>
<SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
<InternalLink Name="T2_C2" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-2:PPR"
 RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-2:PPR" />
<InternalLink Name="T2_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-2:PPR"
 RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels:PPR" />
<RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegment" />
</InternalElement>
<InternalElement Name="Assemble" ID="Assemble">
 <Description>
 Assembling is accomplished by the robot, which attaches wheels to cars
 without wheels in order to transform them into cars with wheels.
 </Description>
 <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
 <Value>Assemble</Value>
 </Attribute>
 <Attribute Name="operationsType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
 <Value>Production</Value>
 </Attribute>
 <Attribute Name="duration" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
 <Value>2</Value>
 </Attribute>
 <Attribute Name="durationUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
 <Value>minutes</Value>
 </Attribute>
 <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-18"
 />
 <ExternalInterface Name="DC" RefBaseClassPath="DC" ID="DC-04" />
 <InternalElement Name="Robot-Specification" ID="Robot-Specification">
 <Description>
 Robot needed for attaching wheels to cars without wheels.
 </Description>
 <Attribute Name="equipmentUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
 <Value>Attach Wheels</Value>
 </Attribute>
 <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
 <Value>2</Value>
 </Attribute>
 <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
 <Value>machine minutes / piece</Value>
 </Attribute>
 <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-14" />
 <InternalLink Name="a_r" RefPartnerSideA="Robot-Specification:RC"
 RefPartnerSideB="Robot:RC" />
 <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="EquipmentSegmentSpecification"
 />
 </InternalElement>
 <InternalElement Name="Car-without-Wheels-Specification"
 ID="Car-without-Wheels-Specification">`

```
578      <Description>
579          The cars without wheels that are to be refined.
580      </Description>
581      <Attribute Name="materialUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
582          <Value>Material Consumed</Value>
583      </Attribute>
584      <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
585          <Value>1</Value>
586      </Attribute>
587      <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
588          <Value>units</Value>
589      </Attribute>
590      <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-15" />
591      <InternalLink Name="a_cwow"
592          RefPartnerSideA="Car-without-Wheels-Specification:RC"
593          RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels:RC" />
594      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialSegmentSpecification"
595          />
596  </InternalElement>
597  <InternalElement Name="Wheel-Specification" ID="Wheel-Specification">
598      <Description>The wheels that are to be attached.</Description>
599      <Attribute Name="materialUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
600          <Value>Material Consumed</Value>
601      </Attribute>
602      <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
603          <Value>4</Value>
604      </Attribute>
605      <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
606          <Value>units</Value>
607      </Attribute>
608      <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-16" />
609      <InternalLink Name="a_w" RefPartnerSideA="Wheel-Specification:RC"
610          RefPartnerSideB="Wheel:RC" />
611      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialSegmentSpecification"
612          />
613  </InternalElement>
614  <InternalElement Name="Car-with-Wheels-Specification"
615      ID="Car-with-Wheels-Specification">
616      <Description>The cars with wheels that are produced.</Description>
617      <Attribute Name="materialUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
618          <Value>Material Produced</Value>
619      </Attribute>
620      <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
621          <Value>1</Value>
622      </Attribute>
623      <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
624          <Value>units</Value>
625      </Attribute>
626      <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-17" />
627      <InternalLink Name="a_cww"
628          RefPartnerSideA="Car-with-Wheels-Specification:RC"
629          RefPartnerSideB="Car-with-Wheels:RC" />
630      <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialSegmentSpecification"
631          />
632  </InternalElement>
633  <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
634  <InternalLink Name="A_R" RefPartnerSideA="Assemble:PPR"
635      RefPartnerSideB="Robot:PPR" />
636  <InternalLink Name="A_CWOW" RefPartnerSideA="Assemble:PPR"
637      RefPartnerSideB="Car-without-Wheels:PPR" />
638  <InternalLink Name="A_W" RefPartnerSideA="Assemble:PPR"
639      RefPartnerSideB="Wheel:PPR" />
640  <InternalLink Name="A_CWW" RefPartnerSideA="Assemble:PPR"
641      RefPartnerSideB="Car-with-Wheels:PPR" />
642  <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegment" />
643</InternalElement>
```

```

644 <InternalElement Name="Transport-3" ID="Transport-3">
645   <Description>
646     Transport-3 is accomplished with Conveyer-2. Cars with wheels are
647     delivered from the robot to the product drain for finished
648     products.
649   </Description>
650   <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
651     <Value>Transport-3</Value>
652   </Attribute>
653   <Attribute Name="operationsType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
654     <Value>Production</Value>
655   </Attribute>
656   <Attribute Name="duration" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
657     <Value>10</Value>
658   </Attribute>
659   <Attribute Name="durationUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
660     <Value>seconds</Value>
661   </Attribute>
662   <ExternalInterface Name="PPR" RefBaseClassPath="PPRConnector" ID="PPR-19">
663     /
664   <ExternalInterface Name="DC" ID="DC-05" RefBaseClassPath="DC" />
665   <InternalElement Name="Conveyer-2-Specification"
666     ID="Conveyer-2-Specification">
667     <Description>
668       Conveyer needed for transporting cars with wheels from the robot to
669       the product drain.
670     </Description>
671     <Attribute Name="equipmentUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
672       <Value>Material Movement</Value>
673     </Attribute>
674     <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
675       <Value>10</Value>
676     </Attribute>
677     <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
678       <Value>machine seconds / piece</Value>
679     </Attribute>
680     <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-18" />
681     <InternalLink Name="t3_c2">
682       RefPartnerSideA="Conveyer-2-Specification:RC"
683       RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-2:RC" />
684     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="EquipmentSegmentSpecification"
685       />
686   </InternalElement>
687   <InternalElement Name="Car-with-Wheels-Specification"
688     ID="Car-with-Wheels-Specification">
689     <Description>
690       The cars with wheels that are to be transported.
691     </Description>
692     <Attribute Name="materialUse" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
693       <Value>Material Moved</Value>
694     </Attribute>
695     <Attribute Name="quantity" AttributeDataType="xs:decimal">
696       <Value>1</Value>
697     </Attribute>
698     <Attribute Name="quantityUnitOfMeasure" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
699       <Value>units</Value>
700     </Attribute>
701     <ExternalInterface Name="RC" RefBaseClassPath="RC" ID="RC-19" />
702     <InternalLink Name="t3_cw">
703       RefPartnerSideA="Car-with-Wheels-Specification:RC"
704       RefPartnerSideB="Car-with-Wheels:RC" />
705     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="MaterialSegmentSpecification"
706       />
707   </InternalElement>
708   <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="WorkCell" />
709   <InternalLink Name="T3_C2" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-3:PPR">

```

```
710     RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-2:PPR" />
711     <InternalLink Name="T3_CWW" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-3:PPR"
712         RefPartnerSideB="Car-with-Wheels:PPR" />
713         <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegment" />
714     </InternalElement>
715     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessStructure" />
716 </InternalElement>
717 <InternalElement Name="EquipmentAssetMappings" ID="EquipmentAssetMappings">
718     <InternalElement Name="EAM1" ID="EAM-01">
719         <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
720             <Description>The starting time of the association.</Description>
721             <Value>2017-01-01</Value>
722         </Attribute>
723         <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-09" />
724         <InternalLink Name="eam1_c1pa" RefPartnerSideB="EAM-01:EAC"
725             RefPartnerSideA="Conveyer-1-PA:EAC" />
726         <InternalLink Name="eam1_c1" RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-1:EAC"
727             RefPartnerSideA="EAM-01:EAC" />
728             <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="EquipmentAssetMapping" />
729     </InternalElement>
730     <InternalElement Name="EAM2" ID="EAM-02">
731         <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
732             <Description>The starting time of the association.</Description>
733             <Value>2017-01-03</Value>
734         </Attribute>
735         <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-10" />
736         <InternalLink Name="eam2_ttpa" RefPartnerSideB="EAM-02:EAC"
737             RefPartnerSideA="Turntable-PA:EAC" />
738         <InternalLink Name="eam2_tt" RefPartnerSideB="Turntable:EAC"
739             RefPartnerSideA="EAM-02:EAC" />
740             <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="EquipmentAssetMapping" />
741     </InternalElement>
742     <InternalElement Name="EAM3" ID="EAM-03">
743         <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
744             <Description>The starting time of the association.</Description>
745             <Value>2017-01-02</Value>
746         </Attribute>
747         <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-11" />
748         <InternalLink Name="eam3_c2pa" RefPartnerSideB="EAM-03:EAC"
749             RefPartnerSideA="Conveyer-2-PA:EAC" />
750         <InternalLink Name="eam3_c2" RefPartnerSideB="Conveyer-2:EAC"
751             RefPartnerSideA="EAM-03:EAC" />
752             <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="EquipmentAssetMapping" />
753     </InternalElement>
754     <InternalElement Name="EAM4" ID="EAM-04">
755         <Attribute Name="startTime" AttributeDataType="xs:dateTime">
756             <Description>The starting time of the association.</Description>
757             <Value>2017-01-04</Value>
758         </Attribute>
759         <ExternalInterface Name="EAC" RefBaseClassPath="EAC" ID="EAC-12" />
760         <InternalLink Name="eam4_rpa" RefPartnerSideB="EAM-04:EAC"
761             RefPartnerSideA="Robot-PA:EAC" />
762         <InternalLink Name="eam4_r" RefPartnerSideB="Robot:EAC"
763             RefPartnerSideA="EAM-04:EAC" />
764             <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="EquipmentAssetMapping" />
765     </InternalElement>
766     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="BR" />
767 </InternalElement>
768 <InternalElement Name="ProcessSegmentDependencies"
769     ID="ProcessSegmentDependencies">
770     <InternalElement Name="Turn-after-Transport-1"
771         ID="Turn-after-Transport-1-Dependency">
772             <Description>Turn after Transport-1</Description>
773             <Attribute Name="dependency" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
774                 <Value>Start Turn after Transport-1 end</Value>
775             </Attribute>
```

```

776     <ExternalInterface Name="DC" RefBaseClassPath="DC" ID="DC-06" />
777     <InternalLink Name="dc_t1"
778         RefPartnerSideA="Turn-after-Transport-1-Dependency:DC"
779         RefPartnerSideB="Transport-1:DC" />
780     <InternalLink Name="dc_t"
781         RefPartnerSideA="Turn-after-Transport-1-Dependency:DC"
782         RefPartnerSideB="Turn:DC" />
783     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegmentDependency" />
784   </InternalElement>
785   <InternalElement Name="Transport-2-after-Turn" ID="Transport-2-after-Turn">
786     <Description>Transport-2 after Turn</Description>
787     <Attribute Name="dependency" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
788       <Value>Start Transport-2 after Turn end</Value>
789     </Attribute>
790     <ExternalInterface Name="DC" RefBaseClassPath="DC" ID="DC-07" />
791     <InternalLink Name="dc_t" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-2-after-Turn:DC"
792         RefPartnerSideB="Turn:DC" />
793     <InternalLink Name="dc_t2" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-2-after-Turn:DC"
794         RefPartnerSideB="Transport-2:DC" />
795     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegmentDependency" />
796   </InternalElement>
797   <InternalElement Name="Assemble-after-Transport-2"
798     ID="Assemble-after-Transport-2">
799     <Description>Assemble after Transport-2</Description>
800     <Attribute Name="dependency" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
801       <Value>Start Assemble after Transport-2 end</Value>
802     </Attribute>
803     <ExternalInterface Name="DC" RefBaseClassPath="DC" ID="DC-08" />
804     <InternalLink Name="dc_t2" RefPartnerSideA="Assemble-after-Transport-2:DC"
805         RefPartnerSideB="Transport-2:DC" />
806     <InternalLink Name="dc_a" RefPartnerSideA="Assemble-after-Transport-2:DC"
807         RefPartnerSideB="Assemble:DC" />
808     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegmentDependency" />
809   </InternalElement>
810   <InternalElement Name="Transport-3-after-Assemble"
811     ID="Transport-3-after-Assemble">
812     <Description>Transport-3 after Assemble</Description>
813     <Attribute Name="dependency" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
814       <Value>Start Transport-3 after Assemble end</Value>
815     </Attribute>
816     <ExternalInterface Name="DC" RefBaseClassPath="DC" ID="DC-09" />
817     <InternalLink Name="dc_a" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-3-after-Assemble:DC"
818         RefPartnerSideB="Assemble:DC" />
819     <InternalLink Name="dc_t3" RefPartnerSideA="Transport-3-after-Assemble:DC"
820         RefPartnerSideB="Transport-3:DC" />
821     <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="ProcessSegmentDependency" />
822   </InternalElement>
823   <RoleRequirements RefBaseRoleClassPath="BR" />
824 </InternalElement>
825 </InstanceHierarchy>
826 <RoleClassLib Name="IEC62264-PPR-RCL">
827   <Version>1.0.0</Version>
828   <RoleClass Name="EquipmentClasses" RefBaseClassPath="ResourceStructure">
829     <RoleClass Name="Conveyer-Class" RefBaseClassPath="EquipmentClass">
830       <Description>
831         Conveyers of all kind belong to the Conveyer equipment class.
832       </Description>
833       <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
834         <Value>Conveyer-Class</Value>
835       </Attribute>
836     </RoleClass>
837     <RoleClass Name="Turntable-Class" RefBaseClassPath="EquipmentClass">
838       <Description>
839         Turntables of all kind belong to the Turntable equipment class.
840       </Description>
841       <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">

```

```
842         <Value>Turntable-Class</Value>
843     </Attribute>
844 </RoleClass>
845 <RoleClass Name="Robot-Class" RefBaseClassPath="EquipmentClass">
846     <Description>
847         Robots of all kind belong to the Robot equipment class.
848     </Description>
849     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
850         <Value>Robot-Class</Value>
851     </Attribute>
852 </RoleClass>
853 </RoleClass>
854 <RoleClass Name="MaterialClasses" RefBaseClassPath="ProductStructure">
855     <RoleClass Name="Car-without-Wheels-Class" RefBaseClassPath="MaterialClass">
856         <Description>
857             Cars without wheels of all kind belong to the Car-without-Wheels
858             material class.
859         </Description>
860         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
861             <Value>Car-without-Wheels-Class</Value>
862         </Attribute>
863     </RoleClass>
864     <RoleClass Name="Wheel-Class" RefBaseClassPath="MaterialClass">
865         <Description>
866             Wheels of all kind belong to the Wheel material class.
867         </Description>
868         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
869             <Value>Wheel-Class</Value>
870         </Attribute>
871     </RoleClass>
872     <RoleClass Name="Car-with-Wheels-Class" RefBaseClassPath="MaterialClass">
873         <Description>
874             Cars with wheels of all kind belong to the Car-with-Wheels material
875             class.
876         </Description>
877         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
878             <Value>Car-with-Wheels-Class</Value>
879         </Attribute>
880         <Attribute Name="assemblyType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
881             <Value>Physical</Value>
882         </Attribute>
883         <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
884             <Value>Permanent</Value>
885         </Attribute>
886     </RoleClass>
887 </RoleClass>
888 </RoleClassLib>
889 <SystemUnitClassLib Name="IEC62264-PPR-SUC">
890     <Description>
891         Integration of IEC 62264 information by modeling complete IEC 62264
892         structures within AML.
893     </Description>
894     <Version>1.0.0</Version>
895     <SystemUnitClass Name="PhysicalAssetClasses">
896         <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="ResourceStructure" />
897         <SystemUnitClass Name="Short-Conveyer-PA-Class">
898             <Description>The short conveyer of Conveyer Manufacturer.</Description>
899             <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
900                 <Value>Short-Conveyer-PA-Class</Value>
901             </Attribute>
902             <Attribute Name="manufacturer" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
903                 <Value>Conveyer Manufacturer</Value>
904             </Attribute>
905             <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="PhysicalAssetClass" />
906         </SystemUnitClass>
907         <SystemUnitClass Name="Long-Conveyer-PA-Class">
```

```
908     <Description>The long conveyer of Conveyer Manufacturer.</Description>
909     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
910         <Value>Long-Conveyer-PA-Class</Value>
911     </Attribute>
912     <Attribute Name="manufacturer" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
913         <Value>Conveyer Manufacturer</Value>
914     </Attribute>
915     <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="PhysicalAssetClass" />
916 </SystemUnitClass>
917 <SystemUnitClass Name="Turntable-PA-Class">
918     <Description>
919         The high end turntable of Turntable Manufacturer.
920     </Description>
921     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
922         <Value>Turntable-PA-Class</Value>
923     </Attribute>
924     <Attribute Name="manufacturer" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
925         <Value>Turntable Manufacturer</Value>
926     </Attribute>
927     <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="PhysicalAssetClass" />
928 </SystemUnitClass>
929 <SystemUnitClass Name="Robot-PA-Class">
930     <Description>The only robot of Robot Manufacturer.</Description>
931     <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
932         <Value>Robot-PA-Class</Value>
933     </Attribute>
934     <Attribute Name="manufacturer" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
935         <Value>Robot Manufacturer</Value>
936     </Attribute>
937     <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="PhysicalAssetClass" />
938 </SystemUnitClass>
939 </SystemUnitClass>
940 <SystemUnitClass Name="MaterialDefinitions">
941     <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="ProductStructure" />
942     <SystemUnitClass Name="Car-without-Wheels" ID="Car-without-Wheels">
943         <Description>A car that has no wheels attached.</Description>
944         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
945             <Value>Car-without-Wheels</Value>
946         </Attribute>
947         <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
948         <SupportedRoleClass
949             RefRoleClassPath=
950                 "IEC62264-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Car-without-Wheels-Class" />
951     </SystemUnitClass>
952     <SystemUnitClass Name="Wheel" ID="Wheel">
953         <Description>A wheel that is to be attached to a car.</Description>
954         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
955             <Value>Wheel</Value>
956         </Attribute>
957         <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
958         <SupportedRoleClass
959             RefRoleClassPath="IEC62264-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Wheel-Class" />
960     </SystemUnitClass>
961     <SystemUnitClass Name="Car-with-Wheels" ID="Car-with-Wheels">
962         <Description>A car with wheels attached.</Description>
963         <Attribute Name="id" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
964             <Value>Car-with-Wheels</Value>
965         </Attribute>
966         <Attribute Name="assemblyType" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
967             <Value>Physical</Value>
968         </Attribute>
969         <Attribute Name="assemblyRelationship" AttributeDataType="xs:string">
970             <Value>Permanent</Value>
971         </Attribute>
972         <SupportedRoleClass RefRoleClassPath="MaterialDefinition" />
973         <SupportedRoleClass
```

```
974             RefRoleClassPath=
975                 "IEC62264-PPR-RCL/MaterialClasses/Car-with-Wheels-Class"  />
976             </SystemUnitClass>
977         </SystemUnitClass>
978     </SystemUnitClassLib>
```